Unit (1) What can I do?

Vocabulary كلمات

senses	الحواس
tongue (taste)	اللسان (التذوق)
nose (smell)	الأنف (الشم)
ears (hearing)	الأذنان (السمع)
eyes (sight)	العينان (البصر)
skin (touch)	الجلد (اللمس)
respiratory system	الجهاز التنفسي
digestive system	الجهاز الهضمي
pump blood	يضخ الدم
nutrients	عناصر غذائية
code	شفرة
stomach	المعدة
energy	طاقة
muscles	العضلات
brain	المخ
skeleton	هيكل عظمي
lungs	الرئتان
bone	عظمة
liquid	سائل
organ	عضو (في الجسم)
oxygen	أكسجين
sign language	لغة الإشارة

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

communicate in	يتواصل بلغة
breathe in ... through	يتنفس ... من خلال
be made up of	يتكون من
think about	يفكر في
What kind of?	ما نوع ؟
make choices	يختار
look disappointed	يبدو محبطًا
change ... into	يحول إلى
do something	يفعل شيئًا
find out	يعرف / يكتشف
practice football	يمارس كرة القدم
different from	مختلف عن
attached to	متصل بـ
take place	يحدث

Help your child revise Unit (1). ساعد طفلك ان يراجع الوحدة الأولى.

Scanned with OKEN Scanner

Language

Present Simple Tense

Usage

We use the present simple to talk about:

- ❒ Something that is true. شيء حقيقي.
 e.g. Cows give us milk.
- ❒ Something that happens regularly (habit). شيء يحدث بانتظام (عادة).
 e.g. I play football every day.

Form

(I / We / You / They / Plural noun) + inf. (مصدر الفعل)...

e.g. We play tennis after school.

(He / She / It / Singular noun) + inf. + (s / es / ies) ...

e.g. Noura plays volleyball on Mondays.

Keywords

always	دائمًا	usually	عادةً
often	غالبًا	sometimes	أحيانًا
never	أبدًا	every (day, week, ...)	كل (يوم، أسبوع، ..)
on (Mondays, Fridays, ...)			في أيام (الإثنين، الجمعة،)

e.g. Adam goes to the park every week.

e.g. Kareem always does drawing.

Help your child revise Unit (1).
ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة الأولى.

Scanned with OKEN Scanner

Activities

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We use our digestive system when we and drink.
 a) breathe b) think c) eat d) walk
2. We chew food, then it goes to our
 a) lungs b) heart c) stomach d) teeth
3. The food into energy and nutrients.
 a) changes b) moves c) uses d) mixes
4. We need energy and nutrients in our
 a) hair b) clothes c) bodies d) home

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The Paralympic is an international competition.
 a) Puzzles b) Games c) Music d) Plays
2. The Olympics takes place every years.
 a) four b) five c) three d) two
3. is an important area in sports.
 a) Football b) Tennis c) Parasports d) Basketball
4. Egypt has many who take part in these competitions.
 a) athletes b) vets c) teachers d) captains

2 Listen and complete.

1. People who are or have difficulty hearing can learn sign language.
2. Sign language is different in each

Scanned with OKEN Scanner

3 We use our hands, ... and bodies to communicate.

4 People use instead of hearing to understand.

Listen and complete.

1 It's fun to play games.

2 Sitting still for a long time isn't good for your

3 People eat unhealthy when they are watching TV.

4 Try not to develop unhealthy

3 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

eyes - senses - hear - five

Toka : How many (1) do we have?

Nour : We have (2) senses.

Toka : How can we (3) ?

Nour : We hear with our ears.

Toka : How can we see?

Nour : We can see with our (4)

4 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

sign - different - hands - deaf

People who are 1) or can't hear well can learn 2) language. This is a language in which we use our 3), faces and bodies to communicate. Sign language is 4) in each country.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Scanned with OKEN Scanner

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Vocabulary)

1. The are people who can't hear.
 a) deaf b) blind c) young d) old
2. are attached to our bones.
 a) Muscles b) Lungs c) Skeletons d) Hair
3. Blood is pumped around our body by the
 a) bones b) muscles c) stomach d) heart
4. A is made up of all the bones in the body.
 a) heart b) muscle c) lung d) skeleton
5. People who are can't see.
 a) deaf b) blind c) young d) old
6. He came first, so he won the medal.
 a) gold b) bronze c) silver d) diamond
7. We use the system when we eat.
 a) respiratory b) digestive c) muscle d) skeleton
8. We use the system when we breathe.
 a) respiratory b) sense c) blood d) digestive
9. Deaf people use language to communicate.
 a) sing b) song c) play d) sign
10. When do the Paralympic Games take?
 a) palace b) place c) plus d) police

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك ان يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Scanned with OKEN Scanner

11 protect our organs.

a) Bones b) Stomach c) Skeleton d) Lungs

12 Many athletes take in competitions.

a) park b) part c) put d) port

13 We taste with our

a) ears b) tongue c) hair d) nose

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Grammar)

1 The brain the most important organ of the body.

a) are b) have c) were d) is

2 An adult brain about 1,400 grams.

a) weigh b) weighs c) win d) weighed

3 The average brain 12,000 to 60,000 thoughts a day.

a) does b) has c) have d) had

4 Kareema disappointed.

a) looking b) looks c) look d) to look

5 Adam goes to the park week.

a) every b) never c) always d) usually

6 Sara always drawing.

a) do b) did c) doing d) does

7 Tarek two sisters.

a) is b) has c) have d) had

8 Noura volleyball on Mondays.

a) is played b) play c) plays d) playing

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Scanned with OKEN Scanner

9 We to the beach in the summer.
a) go b) is going c) goes d) going

10 is hungry.
a) We b) He c) I d) They

11 We cookery class.
a) done b) do c) does d) doing

12 I one brother.
a) has b) have c) had d) is

13 He to music every day.
a) listen b) listens c) listening d) is listened

6 Read the following text and answer the questions.

We all need to eat a good diet to stay healthy. But what is a good diet? A good diet includes lots of fresh food and plenty of water to drink. Our brain is about 75% water and it needs water to work well.

We should eat fresh fruit and vegetables because they have a lot of fiber and are full of vitamins and minerals. We need these for healthy skin, muscles, bones, and teeth. We should eat plenty of protein too, as this helps us grow. Foods with protein include fish, cheese, eggs, beans, nuts, and meat.

A) Choose the correct word(s).

1 Our brain is about water.
a) 75% b) 57% c) 55% d) 77%

2 Fruit and vegetables have a lot of
a) oil b) petrol c) fiber d) fats

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك ان يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Scanned with OKEN Scanner

B) Answer the following questions.

3 What does a good diet include?

4 Why do we need vitamins and minerals?

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1 wants - tidy - Mom - the - lounge - to - .

.....

2 play - We - after - tennis - school - .

.....

3 are - They - tired - bored - and - .

.....

4 today, - are - What - doing - Mom - we - ?

.....

8 Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Our senses"

Guiding words:

(every day - eyes - nose - hear - tongue - touch)

.....

.....

Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Our respiratory system"

Guiding words:

(breathe - lungs - oxygen - heart - pass)

.....

.....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Scanned with OKEN Scanner

Unit (2) Plants and animals

Vocabulary كلمات

Vertebrates الفقاريات		Invertebrates اللافقاريات	
backbone	العمود الفقرى	crab	سرطان البحر
amphibians	البرمائيات	grasshopper	الجرادة
mammals	الثدييات	dragonfly	اليعسوب
humans	البشر	jellyfish	قنديل البحر
species	أنواع/فصائل	octopus	الأخطبوط
bird	طائر	snail	الحلزون
bat	خفاش	squid	الحبّار
beak	منقار	arachnids	العنكبوتيات
fin	زعنفة	shell	صَدَفة
fur	فرو	spider	عنكبوت
gill	خيشوم	insects	الحشرات
scales	قشور/حراشف	coral reefs	الشعاب المرجانية
whales	الحيتان	reptiles	الزواحف
warm-blooded	ذوات الدم الحار	cold-blooded	ذوات الدم البارد

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

feed with	يغذي - يطعم بـ	such as	مثل
give birth to	تلد	take in	يمتص
live on	يتغذى على / يعيش على	on the internet	على الإنترنت
find out	يكتشف	on land	على اليابسة
write about	يكتب عن	in water	في الماء

Help your child revise Unit (2).
ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة الثانية.

Scanned with OKEN Scanner

Comparative & Superlative

Comparative Adjectives
صفات المقارنة

Usage الاستخدام

- **We use comparative adjectives to compare two people or two things.**

نستخدم صيغة المقارنة لنقارن بين شخصين أو شيئين.

Form التكوين

adj صفة + er + than.


faster than →


smaller than →


e.g. The cheetah is faster than the ostrich.

e.g. An ant is smaller than a bee hummingbird.

Spelling rules

1. Adjectives ending in (-e), only add (r) to the adjective.

مع الصفات المنتهية بـ (e)، فقط نضيف (r) إلى الصفة.


nicer than →


e.g. The fish is nicer than the ostrich.

Help your child revise Unit (2).

ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة الثانية.

Scanned with OKEN Scanner

2 Adjectives ending in one vowel and one consonant, double the last consonant.

مع الصفات المنتهية بحرف متحرك واحد ثم حرف ساكن واحد، نضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير.



bigger than →



e.g. The elephant is bigger than the ostrich.

3 Adjectives ending in (a consonant + y), change the (y) into (i) and add (-er).

مع الصفات المنتهية بـ (حرف y مسبوقًا بحرف ساكن) فإننا نحول حرف y إلى i ونضيف er



heavier than →



e.g. The blue whale is heavier than the elephant.

Superlative Adjectives
صفات التفضيل

Usage الاستخدام

- We use superlative adjectives to compare someone or something with a group.

نستخدم صيغة التفضيل للمقارنة بين واحد ومجموعة.

Form التكوين

the + adj صفة + est.

small → the small est

e.g. The ant is the small est.



Help your child revise Unit (2).

Scanned with OKEN Scanner

Spelling rules

1. Adjectives that end in (- e), only add (-st).

الصفات التي تنتهي بحرف (e) ، نضيف لها (-st) فقط.

nice ⟶ the nicest

e.g. The bee hummingbird is the nicest.

2. Adjectives ending in one vowel and one consonant, double the last consonant.

الصفات التي تنتهي بحرف متحرك واحد ثم حرف ساكن واحد، نضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير.

big ⟶ the biggest

e.g. The elephant is the biggest animal on land.

3. Adjectives that end in (a consonant + y), change the (y) into (i) then add (est).

الصفات التي تنتهي بحرف y مسبوقًا بحرف ساكن نحول حرف (y) إلى (i) ثم نضيف (est).

heavy ⟶ the heaviest

e.g. The blue whale is the heaviest sea animal.

Adverbs الظروف / الأحوال

An adverb is a word that modifies a verb.
It comes after the verb.

الظرف كلمة تصف الفعل وتأتي بعده.

e.g. He talks sadly.

e.g. Snails move slowly.

Form التكوين

adj صفة + ly

لتكوين الظرف، نضيف (ly) إلى الصفة.

slow بطيء ⟶ slowly ببطء | sad حزين ⟶ sadly بحزن

Help your child revise Unit (2).

ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة الثانية.

Scanned with OKEN Scanner

Activities

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. discovered a tiny chameleon in Madagascar.
 a) Vets b) Doctors c) Engineers d) Scientists
2. People think that chameleon is the reptile in the world.
 a) smallest b) highest c) biggest d) tallest
3. The is 30 millimeters long.
 a) snake b) elephant c) lion d) chameleon
4. That chameleon is bigger than a in Guinea.
 a) cat b) bird c) snail d) frog

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Scientists think that there are 400,000 different types of.....
 a) jobs b) plants c) places d) animals
2. The bright flowers insects.
 a) repel b) warn c) describe d) attract
3. carry pollen from one flower to another flower.
 a) Plants b) Insects c) Colors d) Trees
4. Plants have , which come in many different colors.
 a) animals b) flowers c) trees d) birds

2 Listen and complete.

1. Mammals are warm-
2. Mammals give birth to their

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Scanned with OKEN Scanner

3 They don't eggs.

4 Bats are the only mammals that can

Listen and complete.

1 Birds are - blooded.

2 All birds have

3 Birds lay which are hard.

4 Most birds can

3 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

mammals - zoo - animals - elephants

Hassan : Where did you go yesterday?

Omar : I went to the(1)..... .

Hassan : What did you see there?

Omar : I saw some(2)..... .

Hassan : Which animal did you like best?

Omar : I liked the(3)..... and the monkeys.

Hassan : Are the monkeys(4)..... ?

Omar : Yes, they are. They give birth.

4 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

Arachnids - backbone - cold-blooded - sea - soft

Invertebrates don't have a 1) They are 2) They live in the 3) and some live on land. Some have 4) bodies and some have hard shells. 5) are not insects. They have 8 legs.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Scanned with OKEN Scanner

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Vocabulary)

1. Humans, ... and whales are all mammals.
 a) birds b) dragonflies c) ducks d) lions
2. Birds eat meat, fruit, insects, nuts and.....
 a) chickens b) seeds c) gills d) water
3. Birds have which are hard and made of bones.
 a) beaks b) seeds c) fins d) scales
4. Reptiles have They don't have fur or hair.
 a) beaks b) seeds c) fins d) scales
5. Fish take in oxygen through their
 a) beaks b) seeds c) gills d) scales
6. Amphibians have smooth skin and live in habitats.
 a) moist b) hot c) dry d) noisy
7. Reptiles and amphibians are -blooded.
 a) warm b) cold c) hot d) cool
8. Amphibians always lay their eggs in
 a) land b) water c) sand d) soil
9. Fish have scales and use their..... to move.
 a) beaks b) gills c) fins d) scales
10. Mammals are -blooded and they feed their babies milk.
 a) boil b) cold c) warm d) hot
11. The biggest land animal is the elephant.
 a) Asian b) African c) American d) European

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Scanned with OKEN Scanner

12 The elephant is a

a) mammal b) reptile c) bird d) arachnid

13 The mammals are

a) invertebrates b) vertebrates c) insects d) birds

14 The hummingbird is the smallest bird.

a) insect b) duck c) ant d) bee

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Grammar)

1 The Asian elephant is than the African elephant.

a) small b) smaller c) smallest d) the smallest

2 The whale shark is the fish in the world.

a) big b) bigger c) biggest d) the biggest

3 The blue whale is than the lion.

a) big b) biggest c) bigger d) the biggest

4 The bird is the bee hummingbird.

a) small b) smaller c) smallest d) the smallest

5 The ostrich is the bird.

a) big b) biggest c) bigger d) the biggest

6 Ali is than his brother.

a) tall b) taller c) tallest d) the tallest

7 There is a tiny chameleon in Madagascar. It's the reptile.

a) small b) smaller c) smallest d) the smallest

8 Khaled can run He is a fast runner.

a) quick b) quickly c) quickest d) slow

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Scanned with OKEN Scanner

9 I can write English paragraphs
a) good b) well c) bad d) sad

10 Elephants are land animals in the world.
a) the biggest b) bigger than c) big d) bigger

11 Snails move very
a) slow b) slowly c) slowest d) the slowest

12 Jellyfish swim
a) the quickest b) quickest c) quickly d) quick

13 Ants are than humans.
a) the strongest b) strongest c) stronger d) strong

14 Insects can find food
a) the easiest b) easiest c) easy d) easily

6 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Scientists think that there are nearly 400,000 different types of plants. Most of these have flowers. The bright flowers attract insects, which carry pollen from one flower to another flower.

Primary colors are red, yellow and blue. We make secondary colors by mixing the three primary colors. We can mix red and yellow to make orange. Adding black to a color makes it darker, and adding white makes it lighter.

A) Choose the correct word(s).

1 There are different types of plants.
a) 400 b) 4,000 c) 40,000 d) 400,000

2 Insects carry from one flower to another.
a) seeds b) food c) pollen d) water

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Scanned with OKEN Scanner

B) Answer the following questions.

3 What are the types of colors?

4 How can we make orange?

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1 than - larger - Leopards - cheetahs - are - .

.....

2 horses - Ostriches - than - faster - are - .

.....

3 are - Sloths - than - giant tortoises - slower - .

.....

4 are - the heaviest - Green anacondas - snakes - .

.....

8 Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Keeping animals at the zoo"

Guiding words:

(advantages - disadvantages - protect - wrong habitats - free)

.....

.....

.....

Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Fish"

Guiding words:

(water - gills - cold-blooded - scales - fins)

.....

.....

.....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Scanned with OKEN Scanner

Unit (3) My world

Vocabulary كلمات

community	مجتمع	wind instrument	آلة نفخ
neighborhood	الحي السكنى	shabbaba	الشبابة
citizenship	مواطنة	simsimeya	السمسمية
village	قرية	ney	الناي
capital city	العاصمة	oboe	أوبو (مزمار)
society	المجتمع	qanun	القانون
dynasty	سلالة حاكمة	oud	العود
pharaoh	فرعون	rebaba	الربابة
hieroglyphs	اللغة الهيروغليفية	Raqs Assaya	الرقص بالعصا
scribe	كاتب	Tahtib	التحطيب
unite	يُوحّد	clapping	التصفيق
Upper Egypt	صعيد مصر - الوجه القبلي	Bedouin	بدوى
Lower Egypt	الوجه البحري	fair way	طريقة عادلة
governorates	محافظات	work hard	يعمل بجد
string instrument	آلة وترية	tourists	سائحون

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

write down	يدون / يسجل	work for	يعمل لدى
write in hieroglyphs	يكتب باللغة الهيروغليفية	mix with	يمزج بـ
all over Egypt	في كل أنحاء مصر	lots of	كثير من
home of	موطن لـ	sail on	يُبحر في

Help your child revise Unit (3).

ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة الثالثة.

Scanned with OKEN Scanner

Possessive (adjectives - pronouns)

Subject pronouns		Possessive adjectives		Possessive pronouns	
I	انا	my		mine	ملكي
He	هو	his		his	ملكه
She	هي	her		hers	ملكها
It	هو - هي لغير العاقل	its	+ noun	----	
We	نحن	our		ours	ملكنا
You	انت - انتم	your		yours	ملكك - ملككم
They	هم	their		theirs	ملكهم

e.g. - This is my pen. = This pen is mine.
- These are your keys. = These keys are yours.

1 تستخدم صفات و ضمائر الملكية للتعبير عن ملكية شخص لشيء ما.

e.g. This ball is mine. هذه الكرة ملكي.

e.g. This ruler is hers. هذه المسطرة ملكها.

2 ضمائر الملكية غالبًا تأتي في نهاية الجملة

e.g. That juice is mine! It isn't yours. ذلك العصير ملكي! إنه ليس ملكك.

3 - صفات الملكية يتبعها اسم الشيء المملوك.
- ضمائر الملكية لا يتبعها اسم.

e.g. This is my car. It's mine. هذه سيارتي إنها ملكي.

e.g. That is his shirt. It's his. ذلك قميصه. إنه ملكه.

Help your child revise Unit (3).
ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة الثالثة.

Scanned with OKEN Scanner

The Past Simple Tense

Form: التكوين:

The second form of the verb. التصريف الثاني للفعل.

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

يضاف للفعل المنتظم (d, ed, ied).

like ⟶ liked | join ⟶ joined | study ⟶ studied

Spelling rules

1. Verbs end in (e), add only (d).

rule ⟶ ruled | move ⟶ moved | use ⟶ used

2. Verbs end in (y) preceded by a consonant, omit (y) then add (ied).

try ⟶ tried | study ⟶ studied | cry ⟶ cried

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

ليس لها شكل محدد وتحفظ

write ⟶ wrote | is ⟶ was | make ⟶ made

Usage: الاستخدام:

We use past simple tense to express actions that started and finished in the past.

نستخدم الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن الأحداث التي بدأت وانتهت في الماضي.

e.g. They wrote in hieroglyphs.

Keywords: الكلمات الدالة:

yesterday	أمس	last (week, month ,...)	(الأسبوع / الشهر) الماضي
فترة زمنية + ago	منذ	in + تاريخ ماضي (in 2010)	

e.g. I studied English yesterday. e.g. We met Ali 2 hours ago.

Help your child revise Unit (3).

ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة الثالثة.

Scanned with OKEN Scanner

Activities

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. A is a group of people who live together in the same area.
 a) neighborhood b) citizenship c) community d) city
2. My community includes my family, my , and my school.
 a) brothers b) cousins c) sisters d) friends
3. A good is acting in a way that helps your society.
 a) village b) body c) citizenship d) community
4. I am always and helpful at school.
 a) happy b) angry c) polite d) good

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. made pictures of musicians playing instruments.
 a) Artists b) Teachers c) Engineers d) Scribes
2. Ancient Egyptians put instruments into
 a) schools b) homes c) pyramids d) museums
3. Music was important in Egypt.
 a) Lower b) Upper c) Ancient d) Modern
4. were playing instruments in Ancient Egypt.
 a) Vets b) Musicians c) Players d) Doctors

2 Listen and complete.

1. Egypt has a very long and interesting
2. They started to live near the Nile about years ago.

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Scanned with OKEN Scanner

3 Egypt was in the north.

4 Upper Egypt was in the

2 Listen and complete.

1 Taha lives in

2 Alexandria is in the north of

3 Lots of ships sail in and out of the

4 Alexandria used to be the city of Egypt.

3 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

string - instruments - drumming - Saidi

Tamer : What kind of music do you like?

Adam : I like(1)..... music.

Tamer : What(2)..... does this type use?

Adam : It uses(3)... instruments such as violins.

Tamer : Is(4)..... a key part?

Adam : Yes, it is.

4 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

oasis - 440,098 km² - Governorate - capital

New Valley 1)..... is 2)..... in size. It's very large. The 3)..... of New Valley Governorate is Kharga. Kharga is an 4)..... in the south of this region.

Help your child deal with such questions.

Scanned with OKEN Scanner

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Vocabulary)

1. Alexandria and Cairo are
 a) governorates b) countries c) villages d) towns
2. New Valley is the governorate.
 a) smallest b) oldest c) newest d) biggest
3. Upper Egypt was in the of Egypt.
 a) west b) south c) north d) east
4. The Pharaoh Mena the north and south to form Egypt.
 a) decided b) divided c) united d) separated
5. means behaving in a way that helps your society.
 a) Citizenship b) Friendship c) Sport d) Community
6. wrote down everything that happened in Ancient Egypt.
 a) Scientists b) Athletes c) Vets d) Scribes
7. Egypt has many types of traditional music.
 a) folk b) modern c) new d) old
8. There are governorates in Egypt now.
 a) 20 b) 27 c) 35 d) 37
9. The girls at my music club are my
 a) neigborhood b) citizenship c) friendship d) community
10. Scribes wrote on paper made from reeds.
 a) papyrus b) plastic c) paper d) metal
11. The Aswan was built in 1970.
 a) High Dam b) Bridge c) Temple d) Pyramids

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Scanned with OKEN Scanner

12 There are main parts to the history of ancient Egypt.
a) three b) four c) five d) six

13 Saidi music uses violins and
a) cellos b) guitars c) oboes d) pianos

14 Scribes wrote in in ancient Egypt.
a) hieroglyphs b) English c) Arabic d) French

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Grammar)

1 They're Aya's running shoes. They're
a) he b) she c) hers d) theirs

2 It's Fares and Mustafa's neighborhood. It's
a) their b) theirs c) they d) ours

3 It's bike. It's yours.
a) my b) her c) your d) mine

4 Is that your dad's car? - Yes, it's
a) my b) mine c) his d) your

5 It's community. It's mine.
a) my b) mine c) her d) our

6 They're Adam's neighbors. They're
a) his b) he c) him d) her

7 That's your bike. It's
a) his b) theirs c) yours d) mine

8 Scribes very important people in Ancient Egypt.
a) was b) is c) are d) were

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Scanned with OKEN Scanner

9 Where you go yesterday?
a) do b) are c) did d) does

10 People to live near the Nile about 9,000 years ago.
a) start b) starts c) started d) will start

11 Ancient Egyptians in hieroglyphs.
a) wrote b) writes c) write d) writing

12 I English yesterday.
a) study b) studied c) studies d) will study

13 It's my house. It's
a) hers b) ours c) mine d) my

14 It very hot yesterday.
a) is b) was c) were d) am

6 Read the following text and answer the questions.

There is a long history of traditional crafts in Egypt. Two of the most popular crafts are Khayameya and carpet making. In the past, tent makers created Khayameya to decorate huge tents for weddings and other family occasions. Khayameya patterns are beautifully designed using different colors. Today you can buy Khayameya in many traditional stores and markets.

A) Choose the correct word(s).

1 Egypt has a long history of traditional
a) carpets b) sports c) crafts d) cars

2 Khayameya patterns have different
a) stores b) colors c) shapes d) lines

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Scanned with OKEN Scanner

B) Answer the following questions.

3 Who made Khayameya?

4 Where can you buy Khayameya?

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1 people - in - How many - Cairo - live - ?

.....

2 biggest - New Valley - the - is - Governorate - .

.....

3 favorite - My - the oud - instrument - is - .

.....

4 music - singing - Bedouin - drumming - includes - and - .

.....

8 Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Your governorate"

Guiding words:

(Giza - pyramids - big - zoo - Nile)

.....

.....

Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Ancient Egypt"

Guiding words:

(history - Upper Egypt - Lower Egypt - Mena - Nile)

.....

.....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك ان يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Scanned with OKEN Scanner

Unit (4) City and country

Vocabulary كلمات

city	مدينة كبيرة	loom	نول
congestion	ازدحام مروري	wool	صوف
densely populated	ذو كثافة سكانية عالية	artisan	حرفي
sparsely populated	ذو كثافة سكانية قليلة	carpet	سجادة
inhabitants	سكان	spin	يغزل / ينسج
isolated	منعزل	yarn	خيط (غزل)
metropolitan	عاصمي	weave	ينسج
pedestrians	المشاة	buffaloes	جاموس
traditional	تقليدي	geese	أوز
services	خدمات	sheep	خراف
rural	ريفي	village	قرية
urban	مدني	environment	البيئة
warp	السداة (مد خيوط النسيج)	division	القسمة
dye	يصبغ	fraction	كسر

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

want to	يريد أن	tell about	يخبر عن
live in	يعيش في	more than	أكثر من
a lot of	كثير من	pick out	يختار
be going to + inf.	سوف	in the desert	في الصحراء
in an isolated place	في مكان منعزل	close to	قريب من
learn about	يتعلم عن	have to	يجب أن / يضطر إلى

Help your child revise Unit (4).
ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة الرابعة.

Scanned with OKEN Scanner

Plural Forms

صيغ الجمع

A noun can be singular or plural.
To change a noun from singular into plural, we follow some rules.

1 Regular plural: We add (-s)

brother → brothers sister → sisters

2 Nouns ending in: (o, ch, sh, s, x or z), we add (es)

buffalo → buffaloes box → boxes
dish → dishes watch → watches

3 Nouns ending in: (a consonant + y), we remove the (y) and add (ies).

baby → babies city → cities

4 Nouns ending in: a vowel + y, we add (s).

donkey → donkeys boy → boys

5 Irregular plural: The noun changes (There is no rule)

man → men woman → women
goose → geese child → children

6 Some nouns don't change.

a sheep → sheep a deer → deer
a fish → fish

Note:

يُسبق الاسم المفرد بـ a أو an

Scanned with OKEN Scanner

Subordinating Conjunctions
روابط التتابع

After بعد — لربط فكرتين متتابعتين

e.g. After I went to the park, I met my cousin.

Before قبل

e.g. They have to clean, wash and dry the wool before they can use it.

as soon as بمجرد أن

e.g. As soon as the yarn is dry, they can use it to weave a carpet.

so that لكي — لبيان الغرض أو السبب

e.g. My grandma took me to a spinning and weaving workshops so that I could learn about this craft.

although = even though بالرغم من ذلك — لربط فكرتين متناقضتين

e.g. These artisans only use natural vegetable dyes although some other workshops use synthetic dyes.

While بينما - أثناء — لربط حدثين في نفس الوقت

e.g. The guide explained how the artisans make the carpet while we watched them weave.

Every time كل مرة

e.g. Every time I look at it, I remember how much work and skill it takes to make a carpet.

Scanned with OKEN Scanner

Activities

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Dina lives in
 a) Alexandria b) Cairo c) Aswan d) Luxor
2. Alexandria is a/an on the Mediterranean Sea.
 a) town b) oasis c) city d) village
3. Alexandria is the largest city in Egypt.
 a) third b) fourth c) second d) first
4. Alexandria has an important
 a) lake b) river c) port d) ship

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Dina has a big
 a) park b) school c) family d) group
2. Dina is years old.
 a) 10 b) 11 c) 12 d) 13
3. There are a lot of in Alexandria.
 a) schools b) services c) banks d) streets
4. Dina and her family visit Montaza Palace once a
 a) year b) month c) week d) day

2 Listen and complete.

1. I live in Greater
2. Greater Cairo is a populated area.

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Scanned with OKEN Scanner

3 There are more than million inhabitants.

4 There are a lot of cars so there's also

Listen and complete.

1 The is structure of the carpet.

2 They make the warp using spun Egyptian

3 The make the carpets by hand.

4 They make beautiful geometric

3 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

artisans - workshop - much - enjoy

Noura : Where did you go yesterday?

Amira : I went to a spinning and weaving (1)

Noura : Who explained how the (2) make the carpets?

Amira : The guide at the workshop.

Noura : Did you (3) your visit?

Amira : Yes, I enjoyed it very (4)

4 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

dye - guide - workshop - Artisans

Last week, we went to a carpet 1)

The 2) explained everything to us. 3) use yarn to make carpets. First, they have to wash the yarn and dry it. Then, they 4) it with natural colors.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Scanned with OKEN Scanner

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Vocabulary)

1. About 700 people live in a
 a) country b) city c) village d) town
2. Wool comes from
 a) cows b) horses c) goats d) sheep
3. Aswan is on the Nile.
 a) River b) Lake c) Sea d) Ocean
4. Greater Cairo has more than 20 million
 a) inhabitants b) animals c) cars d) birds
5. spin wool to make it into yarn.
 a) Vets b) Artisans c) Doctors d) Teachers
6. The at the carpet workshop explained everything.
 a) farmer b) vet c) engineer d) guide
7. The artisans make
 a) carpets b) medicines c) trains d) cars
8. I live in Greater Cairo. It is a area.
 a) metropolitan b) village c) rural d) city
9. Alexandria is a populated city.
 a) few b) densely c) sparsely d) little
10. An oasis is in the desert so it is a/an place.
 a) urban b) isolated c) densely d) rural
11. A warp is used to make
 a) paper b) wool c) carpets d) cotton

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Scanned with OKEN Scanner

12 Farmers keep animals like

a) buffaloes b) ducks c) geese d) ants

13 have to be careful while crossing the road.

a) Pedestrians b) Drivers c) Pilots d) Doctors

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Grammar)

1 Tamer couldn't eat he was hungry.

a) although b) after c) before d) while

2 I watched my children..... they played in the park.

a) while b) so that c) even though d) although

3 I finished my homework I was tired and had a headache.

a) even though b) while c) so that d) before

4 Laila is studying English she can be a journalist.

a) every time b) so that c) though d) while

5 we go to Alexandria, I remember our holiday there.

a) While b) Every time c) Though d) Before

6 Dina ran upstairs to see her sister she got home.

a) after b) though c) while d) before

7 They ran inside it started raining.

a) so that b) as soon as c) though d) while

8 We chatted with our friends we waited for the bus.

a) though b) so that c) while d) although

9 my sister hears this song, she dances.

a) Although b) Every time c) So that d) While

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Scanned with OKEN Scanner

10 Dad bought a laptop he could work at home.
a) so that b) while c) after d) before

11 The audience didn't wait long the concert started.
a) even though b) so that c) before d) although

12 We had to chop vegetables we cooked them.
a) after b) before c) while d) so that

6 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Last week my father took me to a spinning and weaving workshop. The guide there explained everything to us. He showed us the warp which is the structure of the carpet. Artisans there are very clever. They make beautiful carpets. First, they wash the yarn. Then, they dry it. After that, they dye the yarn using natural colors. I learnt many things there and I enjoyed my time too.

A) Choose the correct word(s).

1 Artisans wash the
a) warp b) yarn c) clothes d) loom

2 The warp is the structure of the
a) carpet b) curtain c) cloth d) sheet

B) Answer the following questions.

3 When did you go to the workshop?

.....

4 Who explained everything to you?

.....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك ان يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Scanned with OKEN Scanner

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1. make - carpets - Artisans - beautiful - .

.....

2. before - We - chop - vegetables - them - cook - we - .

.....

3. sleep - Habeba - although - tired - couldn't - was - she - .

.....

4. animals - farm - We - have - our - on - a lot of - .

.....

5. from - the - The wool - sheep - is - collected - .

.....

8 Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Carpet making"

Guiding words:

(traditional - wool - artisans - yarn - vegetable dyes - loom)

.....

.....

Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Your city"

Guiding words:

(Sharm El-Sheikh - beautiful - services - malls - sparsely)

.....

.....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Scanned with OKEN Scanner

Unit (5) Resources in our world

Vocabulary كلمات

natural resources	موارد طبيعية
renewable	متجدد
non-renewable	غير متجدد
coal	الفحم
metal	معدن
mineral	معدن
plastic	البلاستيك
soil	التربة
stone	الحجر
wood	الخشب
fossil fuels	الوقود الحفري
crude oil	البترول الخام
wave power	طاقة الأمواج
wind power	طاقة الرياح
tidal power	طاقة المد و الجذر
solar power	طاقة شمسية
mechanical energy	طاقة ميكانيكية
electrical energy	طاقة كهربية
natural gas	الغاز الطبيعي
oil well	بئر نفط
petroleum	بترول
solar panels	الألواح الشمسية
global warming	الاحتباس الحراري
run out	ينفد
turbine engineer	مهندس توربينات
solution	حل
share	يشارك
career	حياة مهنية
experience	خبرة
promotion	ترقية
skill	مهارة
talent	موهبة
train	يتدرب / يتمرن
responsible	مسؤول
metropolitan	عاصمي (متعلق بالعاصمة)
supportive	مؤيد / داعم
application	طلب التقدم لوظيفة
member	عضو
teamwork	العمل الجماعي

Scanned with OKEN Scanner

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

use for	يستخدم لـ	types of	أنواع من
look around	ينظر حول	made up of	يتكون من
use up	يستهلك	be made of	مصنوع من
turn into	يتحول إلى	wake up	يستيقظ
around the world	حول العالم	around 80%	حوالي ٨٠ ٪
collaborate with	يتعاون مع	look after	يعتني بـ
next to	بجوار	come from	يأتي من

Present Simple "with the third person singular"

زمن المضارع البسيط مع ضمائر المفرد الغائب

Form: He / She / It / Singular noun + verb + (s / es / ies)

e.g. He wakes up at seven o'clock. e.g. She catches the bus to go home.

Spelling rules:

1- With most verbs, we add (s)

معظم الأفعال نضيف لها (s).

drink → drinks help → helps

2- Verbs that end in (s, z, ch, sh, x, o), we add (es)

الأفعال التي تنتهي بـ (s, z, ch, sh, x, o) نضيف لها (es).

pass → passes watch → watches go → goes

3- Verbs that eng in a (consonat + y), we cross y and add ies

إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف y وقبلة حرف ساكن، نحذف y ونضيف ies .

dry → dries study → studies

4- Verbs that end in a (vowel + y), we add only (s)

إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (y) وقبلة حرف متحرك، نضيف (s) فقط.

play → plays

5- Some verbs change بعض الأفعال تتغير

have → has be → is

Help your child revise Unit (5).

ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة الخامسة.

Scanned with OKEN Scanner

Possessive adjectives

Subject Pronouns ضمائر الفاعل	Possessive Adjectives صفات الملكية
I	my
He (Ali)	his
She (Amira)	her
It (cat)	its
We	our
You	your
They (children)	their



Rules of using possessive adjectives. قواعد استخدام صفات الملكية.

- Use his when the noun is a boy.
- Use her when the noun is a girl.
- Use their when it's not important, or we don't know if the noun is a boy or a girl.
- Use their when the noun is plural.

Note:

لاحظ أن (No one - Someone) تعامل معاملة المفرد، لكن الضمير الذي يعود عليهما يكون جمعًا (their).

Help your child revise Unit (5).
ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة الخامسة.

Scanned with OKEN Scanner



Activities

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Natural resources are materials that we get from
 a) forest b) nature c) people d) school
2. We use to construct buildings and bridges.
 a) stone b) plastic c) wood d) soil
3. We get wood from
 a) farms b) rivers c) forests d) deserts
4. and silver are types of minerals.
 a) Gold b) Stone c) Wood d) Bridge

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Mariam studied at Cairo University.
 a) engineering b) nursing c) teaching d) farming
2. Mariam worked at a farm in Kenya.
 a) cold b) cool c) wind d) hot
3. Mariam is a person.
 a) angry b) calm c) tired d) nervous
4. Mariam worked at a turbine factory in
 a) Egypt b) Spain c) England d) Kenya

2 Listen and complete

1. Fossil fuels are non-renewable
2. oil is turned into petroleum.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Scanned with OKEN Scanner

3 Fossil fuels were plants and animals that lived before the

4 There are serious with fossil fuels .

Listen and complete.

1 Teamwork is very important for the success of a

2 You need to while working with other members.

3 You should have a attitude if things are difficult.

4 You should communicate well with other team

3 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

gas - fuels - nature - non-renewable

Mennah : Can people make natural resources of energy?

Yara : No, they can't. They come from (1)

Mennah : What do you know about fossil (2)?

Yara : They are (3) resources.

Mennah : What are the kinds of fossil fuels?

Yara : Coal, oil and natural (4)

4 Read and complete the sentences with words from the box.

project - train - promotion - career

1 Nadia would like to have a in medicine.

2 Ahmed did his science on tidal power.

3 After two years, Mr. Ali got a to be a senior manager.

4 You will have to for two months.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Scanned with OKEN Scanner

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Vocabulary)

1. is a renewable resource of energy.
 a) Coal b) Wind c) Oil d) Petroleum
2. Fossil fuels cause global
 a) problem b) warning c) wearing d) warming
3. Solar panels turn the energy from the into electricity.
 a) sun b) air c) wind d) waves
4. Wind and water are resources.
 a) non-renewable b) renewable c) fossil d) solar
5. Solar panels don't work well if the weather is
 a) sunny b) hot c) windy d) rainy
6. We take wood from
 a) forests b) seas c) rivers d) farms
7. We grow vegetables and fruits in
 a) ground b) stone c) soil d) sea
8. Solar panels are
 a) unimportant b) cheap c) bad d) expensive
9. Try to find to your problems.
 a) pollution b) solutions c) promotion d) population
10. is to teach someone to do a job.
 a) Training b) Practice c) Talent d) Career
11. Be happy and stay Don't get upset about things.
 a) angry b) noisy c) calm d) rude

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Scanned with OKEN Scanner

12 " " is the ability to do something well.

a) Experience b) To train c) Career d) Skill

13 You should with your team members.

a) collaborate b) generate c) fight d) ignore

14 " " is when you get a higher position.

a) Career b) Promotion c) Talent d) Skill

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Grammar)

1 Hana up at 7 every day.

a) wake b) wakes c) woke d) waken

2 Lara did science project.

a) her b) my c) their d) his

3 Youssef's dad is a mechanic. He cars.

a) fix b) fixes c) fixed d) fixing

4 Hany presented project to the class.

a) they b) our c) their d) his

5 Magdy his answers quickly.

a) to finish b) finishes c) finish d) finishing

6 I visited grandma last Friday.

a) mine b) ours c) its d) my

7 Talia sometimes TV.

a) watching b) watched c) watch d) watches

8 Both children presented projects.

a) its b) her c) their d) his

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك ان يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Scanned with OKEN Scanner

9 Our cat a lot of water.
a) drink b) drunk c) drinking d) drinks

10 He was nervous about projects.
a) her b) his c) their d) mine

11 She to school at 7:30.
a) go b) gone c) goes d) going

12 No one raised hand to ask a question.
a) his b) her c) our d) their

13 Nour the dishes every day.
a) wash b) washes c) washing d) washed

14 Ali and Ahmed play with friends.
a) theirs b) their c) her d) his

6 Read the following text and answer the questions.

There are two kinds of natural resources, renewable and non-renewable resources. Renewable resources can be naturally replaced when they run out. The sun, wind and falling water are examples of renewable resources. Non-renewable resources are things like metal and petroleum. The non-renewable resources have a dangerous problem. The problem is once we have used all of them up. We can't get any more here on Earth.

A) Choose the correct word(s).

1 Renewable resources can be replaced.
a) naturally b) normally c) regularly d) quickly

2 is non-renewable.
a) Wind b) Sun c) Metal d) Water

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Scanned with OKEN Scanner

B) Answer the following questions.

3 What are the kinds of natural resources?

4 What is the problem of the non-renewable resources?

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1 can't - energy - We - destroy - .

.....

2 sunlight - Solar - collect - panels - .

.....

3 non-renewable - Fossil - are - fuels - resources - .

.....

8 Write an email to apply for a job.

We are looking for solar power engineers. Are you creative? Do you have any experience of working in renewable energies? Please write to:

Mr. Mahmoud Gamal, Gamal Design and Technology

MahmoudGamal @gmail.com

To:

Subject:

Dear:,

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Scanned with OKEN Scanner

Unit (6) Let's work

Vocabulary كلمات

transportation	النقل والمواصلات	characters	عناصر / رموز / حروف
air	الجو	search engine	محرك بحث
pipes	أنابيب / مواسير	password	كلمة المرور
rail	السكة الحديد	passphrase	عبارة المرور
roads	الطرق	symbol	رمز
water	الماء	specific	محدد / معين
river ferry	عَبَّارة نهرية	browser	متصفح
entrepreneurs	رواد الأعمال	link	رابط
ship's captain	قبطان السفينة	account	حساب
containers	حاويات	podcast	نشرة صوتية
Suez Canal	قناة السويس	career	الحياة المهنية
freight trains	قطارات الشحن	relaxing	مريح

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

get water from	يحصل على الماء من	stop for	يتوقف لأجل
travel on a/an	يسافر بـ	have to	يجب أن
for a long time	لمدة طويلة	go along	يسير بمحاذاة
look out of	ينظر للخارج من	do research	يعمل بحث
think about	يفكر في	travel past	يسافر مازاد
learn about	يتعلم عن	come to	يصل إلى
wait for	ينتظر	go through	ينتقل خلال
come back to	يعود إلى	hard work	عمل (جاد / شاق)

Help your child revise Unit (6).
ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة السادسة.

Scanned with OKEN Scanner

Present Perfect Tense
(زمن المضارع التام)

Form التكوين

I / We / You / They / Plural noun + have + P.P (التصريف الثالث)
He / She / It / Singular noun + has

e.g. I have eaten fish.

e.g. She has seen her friends.

Negative النفي

I / We / You / They / Plural noun + haven't + P.P
He / She / It / Singular noun + hasn't

e.g. We haven't studied French.

e.g. Ali hasn't seen the new teacher.

Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

Yes / No question

Have + (I / we / you / they / plural noun) + P.P?
Has + (he / she / it / singular noun)

- Have you ever been on a train?
 - Yes, I have.
 - No, I haven't.
- Has she ever traveled on a ship?
 - Yes, she has.
 - No, she hasn't.

Help your child revise Unit (6).
ساعد طفلك ان يراجع الوحدة السادسة.

Scanned with OKEN Scanner

Q.W + have + (I / we / you / they / plural noun) + P.P?
Q.W + has + (he / she / it / singular noun) + P.P?

Where have you been? I've been to Luxor.

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

just	توًا - حالًا	already	بالفعل	yet	حتى الآن - بعد
ever	من قبل - سبق	never	أبدًا	since	منذ
for	لمدة				

Prepositions of transport
حروف الجر الخاصة بوسائل المواصلات

We use (by) with means of transportation.
نستخدم by مع وسائل المواصلات.

- by airplane - by bus - by train - by ship - by air - by water

When there is (a, an or the) before the means of transportation, we use:
عند وجود فاصل مثل (the ، a ، an) قبل وسيلة المواصلات نستخدم.

1. (in) for transportation in which we can't move. (private transportation).
نستخدم in مع الوسائل التي لا يمكننا الوقوف بداخلها. (المواصلات الخاصة).

- in a taxi - in a car - in our van

2. (on) transportation on which you can move. (public transportation).
نستخدم on مع الوسائل التي يمكننا التحرك فيها (المواصلات العامة)

- on a train - on a bus - on an airplane

Note : on foot ماشيًا على الأقدام

Help your child revise Unit (6).
ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة السادسة.

Scanned with OKEN Scanner

Future Simple Tense
زمن المستقبل البسيط

Usage الاستخدام

We use (will + inf.) to make predictions about the future:
نستخدم (will + inf.) للتنبؤ بالمستقبل.

e.g. Children will take a flying taxi to school.

Form التكوين

Subject فاعل + (will سوف) + inf.

e.g. Airplanes will use solar energy in the future.

e.g. People will travel to Mars in 2052.

Note:

'll = will

e.g. I will visit my uncle. = I'll visit my uncle.

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

tomorrow	غدًا	soon	قريبًا
next (week - year - etc..)	(الأسبوع، العام،...) القادم	I think	أنا أعتقد ...
in the future	في المستقبل		
in + future time (2030 - 2052)	في + (وقت في المستقبل)		

e.g. They will travel to Aswan tomorrow.

e.g. We will travel to the moon in the future.

Help your child revise Unit (6).
ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة السادسة.

Scanned with OKEN Scanner

Negative النفي

Subject + will not (won't) + inf.

e.g. Robots won't drive trains next year.

e.g. My parents won't buy a self-driving car next year.

Note:

won't = will + not

Interrogative الاستفهام

Yes / No question

Will + subject + inf.?

- Will you travel to the moon one day?
 - Yes, I will.
 - No, I won't.
- Will he go to school tomorrow?
 - Yes, he will.
 - No, he won't.

Wh-question

Question word + will + subject + inf.?

- How will you learn English in the future?
 - I will learn English from the internet.
- Where will you live?
 - I will live in a smart city.

Help your child revise Unit (6).

ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة السادسة.

Scanned with OKEN Scanner

Activities

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Hend looked out of the
 a) window b) taxi c) door d) car
2. Hend was in her house.
 a) grandpa's b) family's c) uncle's d) aunt's
3. The ships were so
 a) wide b) bad c) big d) small
4. Hend often watched the ships with her.....
 a) mom b) parents c) friends d) dad

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We can goods by water over long distances.
 a) help b) plan c) fill d) transport
2. Ships move
 a) fast b) slowly c) quickly d) carefully
3. can carry heavy items.
 a) Bikes b) Airplanes c) Planes d) Ships
4. Airplanes are than ships.
 a) heavier b) faster c) cheaper d) slower

2 Listen and complete.

1. There are ancient Temples in the Valley of the
2. I always wanted to go there because I love

Help your child deal with such questions.

Scanned with OKEN Scanner

3 We stopped for and dinner in different towns.

4 It was really !

2 Listen and complete.

1 engineers design autonomous machines.

2 They test the

3 We will use robots to build new

4 The robots will do jobs that are too or difficult for humans.

3 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

plane - will - bus - drives

Ahmed : How do you go to school?

Sara : I go to school by (1) What about you?

Ahmed : My father(2)..... me to school.

Sara : Where(3)..... you spend the holiday?

Ahmed : In Aswan. We will go there on a (4)

Sara : Have a nice time.

4 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

safe - Experience - technology - Designer

There are a lot of tech jobs. One of them is a UX 1)..... . UX is short for User 2)..... . UX Designers create a positive experience between you, the user, and the 3)..... that you use. They make sure that it is 4)..... and useful for all users.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Scanned with OKEN Scanner

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Vocabulary)

1. The government will send water to the cities through
 a) roads b) pipes c) air d) trains
2. Going by is more comfortable than driving.
 a) bike b) rail c) pipes d) road
3. The ancient Egyptians sent most of their goods by on the River Nile.
 a) rail b) plane c) air d) water
4. The best way to get from the suburbs to the center of the city is by
 a) pipes b) road c) air d) water
5. We will use autonomous..... to do dangerous jobs.
 a) machines b) cars c) trains d) doctors
6. We will use high-speed in the future.
 a) ships b) bikes c) trains d) vans
7. A is a website that helps you find web pages from other websites.
 a) search engine b) browser c) keyboard d) link
8. You can use a to look at web pages on the internet.
 a) browser b) password c) link d) search
9. I'm doing some..... for my science project.
 a) research b) browsers c) options d) lines
10. Use more than 8 when making a password.
 a) characters b) sentences c) words d) numbers

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Scanned with OKEN Scanner

11 Use the search option in the browser.

a) dangerous b) bad c) unsafe d) safe

12 Ships go along the Suez

a) River b) Lake c) Sea d) Canal

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. (Grammar)

1 People will to the moon for holidays.

a) go b) gone c) going d) goes

2 We drive cars that use petroleum.

a) not will b) will no c) aren't d) won't

3 There a personal robot at home.

a) are b) be c) am d) will be

4 People won't fossil fuels to heat their houses.

a) using b) used c) uses d) use

5 Will you go to university? Yes, ...

a) will you b) I will c) I won't d) you will

6 All buildings solar panels on their roofs in the future.

a) has b) have c) having d) will have

7 People watch the news on television.

a) isn't b) won't c) hasn't d) doesn't

8 We will a space station on Mars.

a) had b) have c) has d) having

9 Will you learn to drive a car? No, I

a) am b) will c) am not d) won't

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Scanned with OKEN Scanner

10 There self-driving cars in the future.

a) are b) am c) will be d) be

11 people live on the moon one day?

a) Have b) Are c) Will d) Does

12 Robots will airplanes in the future.

a) fly b) flies c) flew d) flying

6 Read the following text and answer the questions.

There are many ways of transporting goods and products over long or short distances.

First, we can transport goods long distances by water. Ships move slowly but they can carry large items such as automobiles and machinery.

Second, we can transport goods long distances by air. Airplanes are faster than ships so air travel is good for transporting fresh food.

Next, rail, road and pipelines are also used for transportation. Freight trains can travel across the country and trucks can travel from city to city. Pipelines are used for carrying natural resources such as oil, natural gas and water.

A) Choose the correct word(s).

1 Ships move

a) fast b) slowly c) quickly d) badly

2 It's good to transfer fresh food by

a) ships b) cars c) airplanes d) trains

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Scanned with OKEN Scanner

B) Answer the following questions.

3 How can we transport goods long distances?

4 What is used for carrying oil and water?

7 Order the words to make correct sentences.

1 never - plane - I've - by - traveled - .

.....

2 friends - Don't - your - tell - passwords - your - .

.....

3 fly - Robots - will - the future - in - airplanes - .

.....

4 live - moon - Will - the - on - people - ?

.....

8 Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Being safe online"

Guiding words:

(Internet - password - friends - information - option)

.....

.....

Write a text of FORTY (40) words.

"Transportation"

Guiding words:

(air - water - road - rail - goods - ships)

.....

.....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك ان يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Scanned with OKEN Scanner

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

Present		Past
is	يكون	was
are	يكونوا	were
become	يصبح	became
burn	يحرق	burnt
build	يبني	built
choose	يختار	chose
catch	يمسك	caught
come	يأتي	came
drive	يسوق - يقود	drove
do	يفعل	did
draw	يرسم	drew
drink	يشرب	drank
go	يذهب	went
eat	يأكل	ate
feel	يشعر	felt
fly	يطير	flew
feed	يطعم	fed
find	يجد	found
get	يحصل على	got
give	يعطي	gave
grow	يزرع	grew
hear	يسمع	heard
have	يمتلك	had

Present		Past
know	يعرف	knew
lay	تضع (البيض)	laid
let	يدع - يسمح	let
make	يصنع	made
meet	يقابل	met
put	يضع	put
run out	ينفد	ran out
run	يجري	ran
hide	يختبئ - يخفي	hid
tell	يخبر	told
take	يأخذ	took
take part	يشارك	took part
spin	يغزل - ينسج	spun
sit	يجلس	sat
say	يقول	said
see	يرى	saw
smell	يشم	smelt
swim	يسبح	swam
sing	يغني	sang
wake	يستيقظ	woke
wear	يرتدي	wore
write	يكتب	wrote
think	يفكر / يعتقد	thought

Scanned with OKEN Scanner

Listening Texts

Unit (1)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

We use our digestive system when we eat and drink. We chew and swallow food, then it goes to our stomach. In the stomach, a special liquid changes the food into energy and nutrients that we need in our bodies.

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

The Paralympic Games is an international competition for athletes with disabilities. Like the Olympics, it takes place every four years, and is held in a different country each time. Parasports is an important area in sports, and Egypt has many athletes who take part in these competitions.

2) Listen and complete.

People who are deaf or have difficulty hearing well can learn sign language. This is a language where we use our hands, faces and bodies to communicate. Sign language is different in each country. People use sight instead of hearing to understand what people are saying.

- Listen and complete.

It's fun to play video games sometimes, but it's good to be active as well. Sitting still for a long time isn't good for your health. Sometimes people eat more unhealthy snacks when they are watching TV or playing on the computer. Try not to develop unhealthy habits.

Unit (2)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

In 2012, scientists discovered a tiny chameleon in Madagascar. People think it is the smallest reptile in the world, at just 30 millimetres long! But even that is bigger than a frog in Papua new Guinea. It's 7mm long, so it is the smallest vertebrate that we have discovered.

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

Scientists think that there are nearly 400,000 different types of plants. Most of these have flowers, which come in many different colors. The bright flowers attract insects they carry pollen from one flower to another flower. This helps the flowers to reproduce.

2) Listen and complete.

Mammals have hair or fur on their bodies. They are warm-blooded and they feed their babies with milk and most of them give birth to their babies. They don't lay eggs. Humans are mammals. Most mammals live on land, but some live in the sea, such as whales and seals. Bats are the only mammals that can fly.

- Listen and complete.

Birds are warm-blooded, but they don't have fur or hair. All birds have feathers, and they all have wings. Birds lay eggs which are hard. Most birds can fly, but some can't.

Scanned with OKEN Scanner

Unit (3)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

A community is a group of people who live and work together in the same area. A community is more than your house, family, or your neighborhood. My community includes my family, my friends, and my school. When you act in a way that is good for your community, this is good citizenship. I am always polite and helpful at school.

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

Music was important in Ancient Egypt. We know this because scribes made pictures of musicians playing instruments, and Ancient Egyptians put instruments into pyramids.

2) Listen and complete.

Egypt is a country with a very long and interesting history. People started to live near the Nile about 9,000 years ago, in 7000 BCE. At first, there were two separate areas. Lower Egypt was in the north, where the Nile joins the sea. Upper Egypt was in the south, where the Nile flows through the deserts of Africa.

- Listen and complete.

I'm Taha. I live in Alexandria Governorate. It is in the north of Egypt. It is important because lots of ships sail in and out of the port. The city of Alexandria used to be the capital city of Egypt.

Unit (4)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Dina lives in Alexandria. It's a beautiful city on the Mediterranean Sea. As you might know, it's the second largest city in Egypt with a population of more than 5 million people. It has an important port and there is a lot of industry there, too.

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

My name's Dina. I'm eleven years old. I live with my family. We are a big family. There are seven people in my family. We live in Alexandria. It's a beautiful city. We have a lot of services. My favorite place is Montaza Palace. I visit it with my family once a month.

2) Listen and complete.

My name's Fareeda and I want to tell you about where I live. I live in Greater Cairo. It's a metropolitan area and densely populated. There are more than 20 million inhabitants, so it's a very busy place. There are a lot of cars so there's also congestion. If you are a pedestrian, you have to be very careful.

- Listen and complete.

Before the artisans can weave the carpets, they have to make the warp. The warp is the structure of the carpet. They make the warp using spun Egyptian cotton. Later, they use the warp and the dyed wool to make beautiful carpets. The artisans make the carpets by hand using a machine called a loom. They add the different colored yarn to make geometric patterns.

Unit (5)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Natural resources are materials that we get from nature. People use these materials for different purposes. We use

Scanned with OKEN Scanner

stone to construct buildings, bridges, and sometimes schools too. Forests, and the wood we get from them, are another important natural resources. There are many different types of metal, which are types of minerals. Gold and silver are two common ones and they are all natural resources.

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

Mariam studied engineering at Cairo University. She worked at a wind farm in Kenya for 3 years. She worked at a turbine factory in Spain. She is very good at problem solving. She has good computer programming skills. She has always been a calm person.

2) Listen and complete.

Fossil fuels are non-renewable resources. Crude oil is turned into petroleum. Fossil fuels were plants and animals that lived before the dinosaurs. There are serious problems with fossil fuels: global warming and climate change.

- Listen and complete.

Team work is very important for the success of a project. In a team, you need members who are responsible so they take the work seriously. You need to collaborate while working with other members to get the best results. They need to have a positive attitude if there are difficult times while working. They need to communicate well with other team members.

Unit (6)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Hend looked out of the window of her family's house. She looked at the ships going along the Suez Canal. The ships were so big. She wants to be a ship's captain. She thinks it's a relaxing job. Hend loved watching the ships. She often watched them with her friends.

- Listen and choose the correct answer.

There are many ways of transporting goods and products over long or short distances. First, we can transport goods long distances by water. Ships move slowly but they can carry large items. Second, we can transport goods long distances by air. Airplanes are faster than ships so air travel is good for transporting fresh food.

2) Listen and complete.

Have you ever been to Luxor to visit the famous ancient temples in the Valley of the Kings? I always wanted to go there because I love archaeology. So, my dad said we could drive there in our new van for our vacation. It took us a whole day, but we stopped for lunch and dinner in different towns. It was really interesting!

- Listen and complete.

Robotics engineers are the people who design autonomous machines - that's just another word for robots. They also test the robots that they design to make sure that they are good at what they do. We will use these robots to do jobs that are

Scanned with OKEN Scanner

Important Topics



Unit 1

Our respiratory system

We use our respiratory system when we breathe in air through our nose, and it goes to our lungs. In the lungs, the oxygen in the air is passed to the blood. Our heart pumps this blood around our body.

Our different senses

We have five senses. We use them to do many things. We can use our eyes to see. We can hear with our ears. We can smell with our nose. We can feel with our skin. We use our tongue to taste. All our senses are very important.

What you like to do at the weekend

To : maged@gmail.com

From : yasser@gmail.com

Subject : What I like to do at the weekend

Dear Maged,

How are you ? At the weekend, I like to do many things. I'd like to go to the park. I can run and play there. I'd like to paint some pictures. I'd like to help mum tidy the room. I'd like to go to the club and practice football. Sometimes, I'd like to do creative things.

Yours,

Yasser

A swimming champion

Aya Ayman Abbas is one of the best swimmers. She is a swimming champion who has won a lot of medals. She has won the Egypt Cup three times. She was the first female Egyptian Paralympic swimmer in Rio in 2016. She has won a lot of gold, silver and bronze medals in different competitions.

The Paralympic Games

The Paralympic Games is an international competition. It is for athletes with disabilities. It takes place every four years like the Olympics. It is held in a different country each time. There are many Egyptian Paralympic athletes. They have taken part in different competitions. They have won many gold, silver and bronze medals.

Respiratory system

There are different systems in our body. The respiratory system is a very important system. It helps us to do many things. We use our respiratory system when we breathe. We use our nose to breathe in the air, and it goes to our lungs. In the lungs, the oxygen in the air is passed to the blood. Our heart pumps this blood around our body.

Unit 2

Reptiles

Reptiles are cold-blooded. They have to spend some time in the sun to keep warm . Most reptiles have four legs. They don't have hair or fur. They have scales. All reptiles lay eggs. Reptiles live in different places. Most of them live on land. Some reptiles live in rivers or sea such as turtles.

Animals in the world

There are many different animals in the world. Some of them are big, others are small. The biggest animal on land is the elephant. The biggest animal in the world lives in the sea. It is the blue whale. The biggest fish in the world is the whale shark. The smallest bird is the bee hummingbird. The biggest bird is the ostrich.

Insects and snails

To : fady@gmail.com
From : seif@gmail.com
Subject : Insects and snails

Dear Fady,

Do you know invertebrates ? Invertebrates are animals without a backbone. Some invertebrates have hard shell such as snails. Snails move very slowly. Insects are also invertebrates. They have six legs. Grasshoppers are the most amazing insects. They can jump very high. The spider is not an insect. It has eight legs. It is called an arachnid. Spiders can move very quickly. See you soon.

Yours,
Seif

Water lily

Water lily have brightly colored flowers and they make seeds which float on water. In addition, their roots spread under the water, and they can cover a very large area. On one hand, this can look pretty, but on the other hand, it can make it difficult for other animals and plants to live under the water.

Birds

Birds are warm - blooded, but they don't have fur. They don't have hair. All birds have feathers and they have wings, too. Most birds can fly well. They lay eggs. Their eggs are hard. Also, birds have beaks. These beaks are made of bones. The beaks are of different shapes because birds eat different food. Some birds eat meat, some eat nuts and others eat seeds.

Amphibians

To : tamer@gmail.com
From : tarek@gmail.com
Subject : Amphibians

Dear Tamer,

I want to tell you about amphibians. Amphibians can live on land and on water, but they need water or a moist habitat to survive. Like reptiles, they are cold-blooded and they lay eggs. However, amphibians, like frogs and toads, always lay their eggs in water.

Yours,
Tarek

Unit 3

My community

My community is a group of people who live and work together in our area. I live with my family in an apartment. There are many special things about my community. There are different places, ideas and activities. In our community, we can do many good things. We help each other and do many acts of kindness. We are polite and helpful.

Scribes

To : ramy@gmail.com

From : osama@gmail.com

Subject : Scribes

Dear Ramy,

How are you ? Scribes were very important in the history of Egypt. They were the people who wrote down everything that happened in the past. They worked for the ruling families or who were called dynasties. They wrote in the ancient Egypt language, hieroglyphs. They drew pictures or symbols that meant one word. They wrote on stone or on paper called papyrus. Children learnt to become a scribe at school.

Yours,

Osama

Music

Egypt has many different styles of music. It has also lots of traditional folk music. Folk musicians from Upper Egypt play Saidi music. This type of music uses string instruments such as violins and the wind instrument oboe. Singing and drumming are also famous there. In the farther south, there is the Nubian music. The Nubian music is now popular all over Egypt.

Folk dancing in Egypt

Folk dancing has a long history in Egypt. It is linked to the folk music of different areas. There are many forms of folk dancing. The most famous one is Nubian dancing. People move their arms and feet to the rhythm of the music. There is also Raqs Assaya. It is the most famous dance from the Saidi musical tradition. In other forms of dancing, people wear special costumes.

How we know about the history of Egypt

Egyptians at that time used scribes to write down everything that happened. Scribes were very important people. They wrote in hieroglyphs, which are pictures or symbols that can mean one word or many ideas. We can see these hieroglyphs today in tombs and museums.

Unit 4

Your city

I live in a city. It's densely populated. There are more than 20 million inhabitants, so it's a very busy place. There are a lot of cars so there's also congestion. If you are a pedestrian, you have to be very careful.

The village life

I live in a nice village. It is by the Nile. It is sparsely populated. Only about 600 people live in my village. My father is a farmer. He grows crops. He also raises animals. There are many services. There are shops where we can buy our needs. There is also a club. We play football there. There is also a hospital with many clever doctors.

Traditional Egyptian crafts

I visited a spinning and weaving workshop. I saw the artisans making the carpets. They spin the wool to make it into yarn after they clean it. Then, they need to dye the yarn. I like the natural vegetable dyes as they are more traditional.

Where you live

I live in a city. We have a lot of services. We have schools, hospitals and lots of shops where you can buy anything. I live with my family in an apartment in a neighborhood called Amrya. It is densely populated. My city is so beautiful. It's on the Mediterranean Sea.

Carpet making

Carpet making is a traditional Egyptian craft. To make a carpet first, they collect the wool from sheep. The artisans spin the wool to make it into yarn after they clean it. Then they need to dye the yarn using vegetable dyes or synthetic dyes. The artisans make the carpets by hand using a machine called a loom.

The city you live in

I live in a big city. This city is called Alexandria. There are about 6 million people live in my city. It is densely populated. Although it is crowded and has many people, there are many services. There are clubs, gardens and beaches. People can enjoy all these services all the time. I enjoy going to the club to practice my favorite hobbies.

Unit 5

Natural resources

Natural resources are materials that we get from nature. We use them for many different purposes. There are two main forms of natural resources. Some resources are called renewable. Renewable resources can be naturally replaced when they run out. The sun, wind and falling water are examples of them. There are also non-renewable resources. They are things that we can't get any more once we have used them up.

Your day

My day starts at 7 o'clock when I get up. I wash my face and brush my teeth. I have my breakfast with my family at home. I take the bus to my school. When I finish my school day, I go home at 3 o'clock. I have my lunch. At 4 o'clock, I do my homework. In the evening, I watch TV or play computer games. I go to bed at 9 o'clock.

Renewable energy

To : samarali@yahoo.com

From : samasami@yahoo.com

Subject : Renewable energy

Dear Samar,

I am writing to you to tell you about renewable energy. Renewable energy is from resources that will not run out. We can make electricity from renewable resources like the wind and water. We can also use sunshine in the desert to make electricity. The solar panels collect energy from the sun. We can use it to make electricity for our home because it is cheap. You can search for more information.

Yours,

Sama

Advantages and disadvantages of solar energy

Solar energy has become very important for some countries. It is the energy that we get from the sun using solar panels. It has some advantages and some disadvantages. Its advantages can be that solar panels are easy to look after. Also, the electricity from it is cheap. On the other hand, the disadvantages are that solar farms need a very big space. Solar panels are expensive and we can't make solar power on rainy days.

Unit 6

Types of transportation

There are many forms of transportation. They include planes, trains, ships, buses, cars and bikes. People use planes to travel from place to place when it is far. They use plane to transport goods too. They also use ships, but planes are faster and more comfortable. Now, there are electric trains and metros. People use cars, buses and taxis to travel around their cities.

How to create strong passwords

It is important to stay safe when we use the internet or go online. It is important to create a strong password. To do that there are many tips. Don't use your personal information like names, phone numbers or addresses. Don't use obvious words. You should use more than 10 characters. You shouldn't tell your friends your passwords. Don't use the same password for different accounts.

The Suez Canal

The Suez Canal is very important. There are many ships go through it every day. It links the whole world. In the Suez Canal, the ships move slowly. The ships have to be straight. There are many ships that carry huge containers. The captains of these ships must be clever. The Suez Canal is also important for the Egyptian people because it gives many jobs to them.

"Search online safely"

Here are some important things to keep in mind to help you search safely. Use the safe search option in your browser. When the search engine shows you your results, you will probably see some ads. You might also see the word sponsor, this means that it is also an ad. Finally, use specific words for your searches.

"Tech jobs of the future"

One of the most important tech jobs of the future is a UX Designer. User Experience Designers create a positive experience between the user and the technology that the one uses, like web pages, apps and machines like washing machines. Another important tech job is robotics engineers. They are the people who design autonomous machines. They also test the robots that they design.

Unit 1

What can I do?

Vocabulary

digestive system	الجهاز الهضمي	difficulty	صعوبة
chew	يمضغ	sign language	لغة الاشارة
swallow	يبلع	version	إصدار / طبعة
stomach	المعدة	code	رمز
nutrients	مواد غذائية	Braille	طريقة برايل للقراءة
energy	طاقة	blind	أعمى
blood	دم	muscle	عضلة
protect	يحمي	combination	تركيب
breath	نفس	dot	نقطة
breathe in	يستنشق	lounge	حجرة جلوس / صالة
breathe out	يزفر	creative	مبدع
lung	الرئة	drawing	رسم
pass to	يمر الي	cerebrum	المخ
pump	يضخ	cerebellum	المخيخ
skeleton	هيكل عظمي	stem	الجذع
bone	عضمة	left hemisphere	الفص الايسر
respiratory system	الجهاز التنفسي	right hemisphere	الفص الايمن
organ	عضو	activity	نشاط
around the world	في جميع انحاء العالم	paralympic games	دور الالعاب الاوليمبية للمعاقين
attached to	مرتبط بـ	disabled	معاق
lift	يرفع	take place	يحدث
move	يتحرك	take part in	يشارك في
sense	حاسة	champion	بطل
sight	البصر	competition	مسابقة / منافسة
hearing	السمع	athlete	رياضي
communicate	يتواصل	dedication	اخلاص
deaf	أصم	get to	يصل الي
opportunity	فرصة	parasports	رياضات المعاقين

1 Choose the correct answer: (On Vocabulary)

1- Food goes to our **(brain – lung – stomach – heart)** when we swallow it.
2- Oxygen is passed to the blood in the **(stomach – lung – brain – heart)**.
3- Our **(stomach – brain – blood – bones)** protect our organs.
4- There are about five liters of blood in the human **(brain – stomach – body – muscle)**.
5- He can carry heavy things he has strong **(muscles – brains – stomach – heart)**.
6- We see with our **(eyes – ears – noses – tongues)**.
7- We taste food with our **(eyes – ears – noses – tongues)**.
8- He can see very well. He has a good **(taste – sight – ear – touch)**.
9- Our ears enable us to **(see – chew – hear – taste)** well.
10- A **(deaf – blind – active – criple)** person can't hear.
11- Braille helps blind people to **(smell – taste – see – read)**.
12- Paralympic games are for **(abled – disabled – enabled – capable)** people.
13- The Olympics **(takes – gives – looks – hands)** place every four years.
14- He is the **(loser – partner – champion – capital)**. He won the gold medal.
15- Our **(local – international – global – national)** team has excellent players like Mohamed Salah.
16- It is **(fun – sad – ugly – sorry)** to play video games.
17- **(Giving – Eating – Sleeping – Doing)** sports is good for our health.
18- You can have a **(snake – stick – snack – stock)** between meals.
19- Eating junk food is **(healthy – unhealthy – wealthy – lately)**.
20- It is important to practise different **(active – activities – activate – creative)**.

Punctuation:

We use capital letters in the beginning of names of people, countries, cities, languages, days, months and sentences.

e.g.

- **A**hmed went to **A**lexandria in **S**eptember.

Exercise:

- Write these sentences with capital letters:

1- i live in aswan in egypt.

.....

2- yusuf speak arabic and english.

.....

3- my teacher is called mrs heba.

.....

4- alaa went to cairo in novamber.

.....

5- omar went to tanta on friday.

.....

Language Functions:
Present simple:

Is used to express facts and habits.

- Form:

I / You / We / They + inf → **negative:** don't + inf.
He / She / It + inf. + s / es / ies → **negative:** doesn't + inf.

Verb to be:

I	→	am
He/She/It	→	is
We/You/They	→	are

Verb to have:

I	→	have
He/She/It	→	has
We/You/They	→	have

Verb to do:

I	→	do
He/She/It	→	does
We/You/They	→	do

- Keywords:

always	دائماً	usually	عادةً	sometimes	احياناً
often	غالبا	every	كل	never	أبداً

Examples:

1- I **want** to travel abroad.
2- Mom **wants** to tidy the lounge.
3- Ali **is** my friend.
4- We **are** happy.
5- I **always** have breakfast at home.
6- She **never** travels alone.
7- We **play** tennis after school.
8- My father **has** a nice car.
9- I **don't go** to school on Friday.
10- My sister **doesn't walk** to school.

1 Choose the correct answer: (On Grammar)

1- The brain **(have – had – has – are)** three parts.

2- Kareema **(look – looks – is looking – am)** disappointed.

3- I **(go – goes – gone – walks)** to the park every week.

4- It **(am – are – is – was)** Sunday today.

5- I **(am – is – are – were)** happy.

6- **(He – She – It – We)** play tennis every week.

7- I **(have – has – is having – having)** one brother.

8- Tarek **(have – has – having – am having)** two sisters.

9- They **(is – was – are – be)** tired.

10- Rasha always **(does – do – doing – done)** drawing.

11- The heart **(pump – pumping – pumped – pumps)** blood around the body.

12- Our tongues **(help – helps – helping – is helping)** us to taste food.

13- He can run and **(plays – play – played – playing)** in the park.

14- She **(study – studied – studying – studies)** her lessons in the evening.

15- Our teacher **(am – is – are – be)** helpful.

16- Children **(like – likes – is like – are like)** sweets.

17- My sister **(don't – isn't – aren't – doesn't)** like music.

18- Some students **(go – goes – are go – aren't go)** to school on foot.

19- She **(always help – always helps – help always – helps always)**.

20- Doctors **(works – working – work – will work)** in hospitals.

2 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1- use – our muscles – **We** – bones – to move – and.

..... .

2- our respiratory system – breathe – when – we – **We** – use.

..... .

3- pumps – **The** heart – blood – body – all over our.

..... .

4- organs – protect – **Our** – our – bones.

..... .

5- with – noses – smell – **We** – our.

..... .

6- the lounge – have to – **We** – tidy.

..... .

7- sports – day – do – **You** – every – should.

..... .

8- habits – avoid – **We** – unhealthy – should.

..... .

9- **It's** – games – fun – video – to play.

..... .

10- rich – vitamins – are – **Fruits** – in.

..... .

Exam (1) on unit (1):

Listening: (8 marks)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 marks)

1- We use our …….. system when we eat and drink.
a- digestive **b- respiratory** **c- skeleton** **d- brain**
2- We chew and …….. food, then it goes to our stomach.
a- breathe **b- smell** **c- swallow** **d- run**
3- In the stomach, a special liquid changes the food into energy and …… .
a- gas **b- nutrients** **c- sand** **d- air**
4- We use our respiratory system when we …… .
a- eat **b- smell** **c- breathe** **d- walk**

2) Listen and complete: (4 marks)

1- We breathe in air through our
2- In the lungs, the oxygen in the air is passed to the
3- Our heart this blood around our body.
4- Our is made up of all the bones in the body.

Reading: (11 marks)

3) Read and complete the dialogue with words from the box: (3 marks)

(theatre – favorite – Valley – vase)

Magda : Do you like studying history, Farah?
Farah : Yes. It's my favorite subject.
Magda : Me too. What is your **(1)** place?
Farah : I like the **(2)** of the Kings.
Magda : Where is it?
Farah : It is in Luxor. What about you?
Magda : I like the Roman **(3)** in Alexandria.
Farah : I like this place, too.

4) Read the following text and answer the questions below: (4 marks)

I'm Jasmine. Every week, I go to the swimming club. I sometimes go with my Mom. I can swim very well. I train hard because I have a swimming competition next month. My brother, Mohammed likes tennis. He walks to the tennis club every day. He can draw very well. Once he drew a picture of his dad. His dad like the picture and decided to buy him pretty colors.
My dad is a clever engineer and my mom is a good housewife. She makes delicious cakes. I like my parents very much.

A) Choose the correct answer:

1- Jasmine's dad is a ……. engineer.
a- clever **b- bad** **c- lazy** **d- slow**

2- Jasmine's mom makes delicious …….
a- rice **b- bread** **c- cakes** **d- ice cream**

B) Answer the following questions:

3- How often does Jasmine go to the swimming club?
…… .

4- What did Mohammed draw?
…… .

The reader: (4 marks)

5) A- Read and write T (true) or F (false):

1- Zeinab's friends aren't clever to learn about Khayameya. ()
2- Mom thinks that Zeinab can help her grandpa. ()

B- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3- Grandpa ……. And cut all the pieces by hand.
a- visited **b- measured** **c- put** **d- had**

4- Zeinab wishes to ……. And help her grandpa.
a- sew **b- saw** **c- play** **d- read**

Writing: (11 marks)

6) Choose the correct answer form a, b, c or d: (4 marks)

1- Hesham TV in the evening.
a- watch b- watching c- watches d- plays

2- We eat junk food.
a- don't b- doesn't c- does d- has

3- We handball in the club every Sunday.
a- plays b- play c- playing d- played

4- speaks English well.
a- We b- You c- I d- She

7) Order the words to make correct sentences: (2 marks)

1- use – muscles – **We** – and bones – move – to.
.....

2- respiratory system – breathe – when we – use – **We** – our.
.....

8) Write a text of fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

(5 marks)

"Football"

Guiding words: hobby – football – play – park – score – goals – team – eleven – exciting

Answered in p.g.(77 : 79)

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Exam 2 on unit 1:

Listening: (8 marks)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 marks)

1- We use our respiratory system when we …… .
a- eat **b- breathe** **c- drink** **d- speak**

2- We breathe in air through our nose, and it goes to our …….. .
a- stomach **b- brain** **c- heart** **d- lungs**

3- Our …… pumps this blood around our body.
a- eyes **b- skin** **c- heart** **d- skeleton**

4- …… are attached to our bones.
a- Muscles **b- Blood** **c- Ears** **d- Noses**

2) Listen and complete: (4 marks)

1- The Paralympic …… is an international competition.
2- Parasports is an important ……..
3- Aya Ayman Abbas is a swimming ……..
4- Aya Ayman Abbas has won the Egypt Cup …….. times.

Reading: (11 marks)

3) Read and complete the dialogue with words from the box: (3 marks)

(cyberfriends – bully – account – parents)

Youssef : You're thirteen now, aren't you?
Wael : Yeah. Why?
Youssef : That means you can sign up for a social media **(1)** …… like me.
Wael : I guess, I'll have to ask my **(2)** …… first. What do you use your account for?
Youssef : I post videos. I also made some **(3)** ……. online.
Wael : But who are these cyberfriends? Do you really know them?
Youssef : No, but I can watch their videos. Some of them are so cool!
Wael : I'll think about it. See you tomorrow.

4) Read the following text and answer the questions below: (4 marks)

We use our digestive system when we eat and drink. We chew and swallow food, then it goes to our stomach. In the stomach, a special liquid changes the food into energy and nutrients that we need in our bodies.
We use our respiratory system when we breathe. We breathe in air through our nose, and it goes to our lungs. In the lungs, the oxygen in the air is passed to the blood. Our heart pumps this blood around our body.
Our skeleton is made up of all the bones in the body. These make us strong and protect organs. Muscles are attached to our bones, they lift and turn bones to make us move.

A) Choose the correct answer:

1- Our heart pumps **(water – juice – blood – oil)** around our body.
2- Our **(skin – hair – skeleton – lungs)** is all the bones in our body.

B) Answer the following questions:

3- Which system do we use to breathe?

..... .

4- Which organ is filled with air?

..... .

The reader: (4 marks)

5) A- Read and write T (true) or F (false):

1- Zeinab went to Grandpa by car. ()
2- Zeinab's grandparents were very pleased to see her. ()

B- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3- Zeinab said, 'Let's go visit ……'

a- grandma **b- uncle** **c- cousins** **d- grandpa**

4- Grandpa is …….. at the moment. Zeinab can help him.

a- pleased **b- happy** **c- sad** **d- excited**

Writing: (11 marks)

6) Choose the correct answer form a, b, c or d: (4 marks)

1- Noura …… volleyball on Mondays.

a- plays **b- played** **c- playing** **d- play**

2- Fatma …… go to museum.

a- aren't **b- doesn't** **c- don't** **d- am not**

3- He doesn't …… Spanish.

a- speak **b- speaks** **c- spoke** **d- speaking**

4- Hamza …… to the park every week.

a- go **b- went** **c- goes** **d- going**

7) Order the words to make correct sentences: (2 marks)

1- respiratory system – breathe – when – we – **We** – our.

…… .

2- organs – protect – **Our** – bones – our.

…… .

8) Write a text of fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements: (5 marks)

"Our senses"

Guiding elements: five senses – touch – skin – smell – nose – see – eyes – taste – tongue

Answered in p.g.(77 : 79)

……

……

……

……

……

……

……

……

Unit 2

Plants and animals

Vocabulary

vertebrates	الفقاريات	hummingbird	الطائر الطنان
invertebrates	الرخويات	ostrich	النعامة
different	مختلف	leopard	الفهد
type	نوع	chameleon	حرباية
mammals	ثدييات	backbone	عمود فقري
fur	فرو	shell	صدفة
warm-blooded	الدم الحار	protection	حماية
cold-blooded	الدم البارد	jellyfish	قنديل البحر
give birth	تلد	octopus	اخطبوط
bat	خفاش	snail	المحار / قوقع
reptiles	الزواحف	squid	الحبار
lay eggs	تبيض	dragonfly	اليعسوب
amphibians	البرمائيات	insect	حشرة
moist	رطب	grasshopper	جراد
habitat	بيئة / مسكن	arachnids	العنكبوتيات
survive	يظل علي قيد الحياة	research	بحث
gills	خياشيم	cell phone	التليفون المحمول
scales	قشور	all	كل
fin	زعنفه	some	بعض
salt water	مياه مالحة	hide	يخفي
fresh water	مياه عذبة	find out	يكتشف / يعرف
wetland	بركة / مستنقع	bright	لامع
feathers	ريش	attract	يجذب
beak	منقار	pollen	حبوب اللقاح
enormous	ضخم	reproduce	يتكاثر
tiny	صغير جداً	predator	حيوان مفترس
African	أفريقي	prey	فريسة
Asian	آسيوي	poisonous	سام
stem	ساق النبات	advantages	مزايا
		disadvantages	عيوب

1 Choose the correct answer: (On Vocabulary)

1- Fish have **(feathers – legs – fins – arms)**.

2- Fish breathe through their **(lungs – gills – noses – eyes)**.

3- Birds have **(gills – arms – scales – feathers)**.

4- **(Reptiles – Amphibians – Birds – Animals)** can live on land or in water.

5- The river has **(fresh water – salty water – mineral water – soda water)**.

6- Birds eat with their **(peaks – beaks – backs – feathers)**.

7- Birds are **(cold – mild – mix – warm)** blooded.

8- Mammals have hair or **(fur – feathers – scales – beaks)** on their bodies.

9- Amphibians lay eggs **(on land – in water – in air – in sand)**.

10- **(Fish – Cats – Dogs – Bats)** are the only mammals that can fly.

11- Fish live in **(air – land – water – trees)**.

12- Beaks are made of **(plastic – wood – meat – bones)**.

13- Mammals feed their babies on **(meat – milk – milkshake – juice)**.

14- The elephant is a/an **(small – tiny – medium – enormous)** animal.

15- A **(snake – tiger – chameleon – bird)** changes colors to deceive animals.

16- The **(red – blue – black – orange)** whale is the largest sea animal.

17- Ants are **(stronger – weaker – bigger – brighter)** than humans.

18- The **(bee hummingbird – elephant – ostrich – parrot)** is the biggest bird.

19- The jellyfish is a/an **(mammal – bird – vertebrates – invertebrates)**.

20- The **(octopus – spider – tiger – chameleon)** has eight arms.

Grammar:
Comparative and superlative

-An adjective describes a noun. الصفة تصف اسم

e.g.
1- Ali is **tall**.
2- The sea is **rough**.
3- I saw a **nice** car.

-An adverb describes a verb or an adjective. الحال يصف فعل او صفة

e.g.
1- He can run **quickly**.
2- She speaks English very **well**.
3- Ahmad behaves **politely**.

Comparative
المقارنة بين اسم و اسم آخر

- Form:

Noun (1) مقارن + Verb to be + صفة + er + than + noun (2) مقارن به
Noun(1) مقارن + Verb to be + more أكثر من/less أقل من + صفة + er + than + noun(2) مقارن به
Noun (1) مقارن + Verb to be + as + صفة + as + noun (2) عند التساوي في الصفة الأولي

e.g.
1- Ali is **taller than** Omar.
2- Sally is **younger than** Rasha.
3- The jacket is **more expensive than** the trousers.
4- Football is **more exciting than** swimming.
5- Swimming is **less exciting than** football.
6- Alaa is as old as Ahmed. They are the same age.
7- Our house is **as big as** yours.

Superlative
المقارنه بين واحد و مجموعة

- Form:

Noun (1) + Verb to be + the + صفة + est
Noun (1) مقارن + Verb to be + the most الأكثر / least الأقل + صفة طويلة

e.g.
1- Tarek is **the oldest one** in the group.
2- Leila is **the most beautiful** girl in class.
3- He bought **the least expensive** jacket.

Irregular adjectives:

Adjective		than		the	
good	جيد	better than	احسن من	the best	الأفضل
bad	سئ	worse than	اسوء من	the worst	الأسوء
far	بعيد	farther / further than	ابعد من	the farthest / furthest	الأبعد
much / many	كثير	more than	اكثر من	the most	الأكثر
little	قليل	less than	اقل من	the least	الأقل

e.g.

- **Samy got eight out of ten. Rasha got nine of ten.**
- **Noha got ten out of ten.**

1- Rasha is **better than** Samy. **2-** Noha is **the best**.

1 Choose the correct answer: (On Grammar)

1- Hany got the **(good – better – best – less)** mark in the class.
2- Mona is **(short – tall – shortest – taller)** than Hana.
3- Cairo is **(big – bigger – biggest – smallest)** than Alexandria.
4- Mr. Ahmed bought the **(expensive – more expensive – most expensive – less expensive)** car.
5- My car is **(new – newer – newest – more new)** than John's car.
6- Egypt is the **(old – older – oldest – more old)** country in the world.
7- The elephant is the **(big – bigger – biggest – most big)** animal on land.
8- The ostrich is **(faster – fast – fastest – more fast)** than the leopard.
9- Ants are **(strong – stronger – strongest – weakest)** than humans.

10- The whale shark is **(the smallest – small – smaller – as small as)** than the blue whale.
11- My bag is **(as heavy as – heavier – the heaviest – heavy)** than yours. They are the same weight.
12- English is **(interesting – most interesting – as interesting – more interesting)** than Science.

13- Cairo is the **(more crowded – crowded – most crowded – as crowded)** city in Egypt.
14- He and I are **(tall – as tall – taller – tallest)** as each other.
15- My sister is **(good – best – the best – better)** than me at English.
16- The train travels **(faster – fast – fastest – slowly)** than cars.
17- He speaks **(slow – slower – quickly – slowest)**, I can't follow him.
18- She is polite, she behaves **(polite – politely – impolite – impolitely)**.
19- He is a fast runner. He runs **(fast – slow – fastest – fasting)**.
20- Don't speak **(loud – louder – loudest – loudly)** in the library.

2 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1- with – are – a – **Vertebrates** – backbone – animals.
.....
2- blooded – **Reptiles** – cold – are.
.....
3- hair – have – **Reptiles** – fur – or – don't.
.....
4- beaks – eat – their – with – **Birds**.
.....
5- oxygen – their gills – take in – through – **Fish**.
.....
6- birds – eggs – don't – **Some** – lay.
.....
7- birds – meat – eat – **Some**.
.....
8- with – their babies – milk – **Mammals** – feed.
.....
9- the biggest – fish – whale shark – **The** – is.
.....
10- is – than – **An ostrich** – faster – a leopard.
.....

Exam 3 on unit 2:

Listening: (8 marks)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 marks)

1- Birds are warm-blooded, but they don't have …….. or hair.

a- fur **b- skin** **c- wing** **d- beak**

2- All birds have ……..

a- beaks **b- skin** **c- feathers** **d- blood**

3- Most birds can ……., but some can't.

a- sing **b- talk** **c- read** **d- fly**

4- Some birds eat meat, some eat nuts and some eat …….

a- sand **b- seeds** **c- stones** **d- water**

2) Listen and complete: (4 marks)

1- Amphibians are cold-blooded and they lay ……..

2- Frogs and …… always lay their eggs in water.

3- Amphibians have smooth skin, not ……

4- Amphibians can take in oxygen through skin and their …….

Reading: (11 marks)

3) Read and complete the text with words from the box: (3 marks)

(urban – volunteer – bike paths – green spaces)

Leen : Hey, Dalia. Did you go to the science museum?

Dalia : Yes, I did. I learned a lot about creating a cleaner **(1)** ……. environment.

Leen : Oh, really?

Dalia : Well, it's important to have **(2)** …….. in a city. The air is cleaner there.

Leen : That sounds like a good idea to me. We need fewer cars too, don't we?

Dalia : Yes, and we need **(3)** ……. for people to ride their bikes on.

4) Read the following text and answer the questions below: (4 marks)

Mammals have hair or fur on their bodies. They are warm-blooded feed their babies with milk and most of them give birth to their babies don't lay eggs. Humans are mammals. Most mammals live on land, live in the sea, such as whales and seals. Bats are the only mammal can fly.

Birds are warm-blooded, but they don't have fur or hair. All birds have feathers, and they all have wings. Birds lay eggs which are hard. Most birds can fly, but some can't. They have beaks, which are made of bone. Their beaks are different shapes because they eat different food. Some birds eat meat, some eat nuts, and some eat seeds.

A) Choose the correct word:

1- lay eggs.
a- **Birds** b- **Mammals** c- **Amphibians** d- **humans**

2- Mammals have or fur on their body.
a- **scales** b- **hair** c- **wood** d- **metal**

B) Answer the following questions:

3- What do mammals feed their babies?
..... .

4- What do birds eat?
..... .

The reader: (4 marks)

5) A- Read and write T (true) or F (false):

1- Zeinab and her grandpa visited the museum. ()

2- Zeinab loves the big picture with all the flowers. ()

B- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3- The big picture with all the flowers took grandpa nearly four
a- **days** b- **weeks** c- **months** d- **years**

4- The big picture with all the flowers is made of thousands of small
a- **dots** b- **stitches** c- **string** d- **yarn**

Writing: (11 marks)

6) Choose the correct answer form a, b, c or d: (4 marks)

1- The Ostrich can run ……. than the leopards.

a- faster **b- fast** **c- fastest** **d- the fastest**

2- The whale shark is …….. than the blue whale.

a- small **b- the smallest** **c- smaller** **d- smallest**

3- Chameleon is the ……. reptile in the world.

a- smallest **b- small** **c- smaller** **d- smaller than**

4- The frog is …….. smallest vertebrate.

a- than **b- there** **c- then** **d- the**

7) Order the words to make correct sentences: (2 marks)

1- are – **Some** – driving – workers – trucks.

……. .

2- you – do – **Where** – live?

……. .

8) Write a text of fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

(5 marks)

"Reptiles"

Guiding words: cold-blooded – spend – sun – have – scales – lay – eggs – snake – type

Answered in p.g.(77 : 79)

……

……

……

……

……

……

……

……

Exam 4 on unit 2:

Listening: (8 marks)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 marks)

1- Fish live in water and take in oxygen through their …….. .

a- east **b- gills** **c- lungs** **d- scales**

2- Fish can't …… air.

a- walk **b- drink** **c- eat** **d- breathe**

3- Fish are cold-blooded and they lay ……

a- birds **b- eggs** **c- plants** **d- animals**

4- There are …… of different types of fish.

a- tens **b- hundreds** **c- thousands** **d- millions**

2) Listen and complete: (4 marks)

1- There are nearly 400,000 different types of ……..

2- Most of plants have ……

3- The bright flowers attract ……

4- The pollen helps the flowers to ……..

Reading: (11 marks)

3) Read and complete the dialogue with words from the box: (3 marks)

(taxi – comfortable – went – traveled)

Zeianb : Hi, Malek. How are you?

Malek : I'm fine ! Thanks

Zeinab : Have you ever **(1)** On a train?

Malek : Yes, I have.

Zeinab : Where did you go?

Malek : I **(2)** to Aswan.

Zeinab : How was the train like?

Malek : It was fast and **(3)**

4) Read the following text and answer the questions below: (4 marks)

Invertebrates are cold-blooded. They live on land and in water. Some invertebrates, such as crabs, have a hard shell for protection. Others, like jellyfish, have soft bodies. Some invertebrates can swim very well, such as the octopus and the squid. Some invertebrates, such as snails, have hard shells and move very slowly. Others are faster. Dragonflies can fly very fast. Insects are also invertebrates. Spiders have eight legs. The grasshoppers are the most amazing insects. They can jump more than a meter. The spider is not an insect. It has 8 legs and is called an arachnid. It can move very quickly.

A) Choose the correct answer:

1- Spiders have …… legs.

a- **four** b- **five** c- **six** d- **eight**

2- Snails are very …… animals.

a- **slow** b- **fast** c- **quick** d- **quickly**

B) Answer the following questions:

3- What do we call spiders?

…… .

4- What do the crabs have for protection?

…… .

The reader: (4 marks)

5) A- Read and write T (true) or F (false):

1- It was the third week of the summer holiday. ()

2- Zeinab went to grandpa by train. ()

B- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3- Zeinab was ……

a- **excited** b- **bored** c- **amazed** d- **happy**

4- Zeinab said, 'Let's go visit ……"

a- **grandma** b- **uncle** c- **cousins** d- **grandpa**

Writing: (11 marks)

6) Choose the correct answer form a, b, c or d: (4 marks)

1- The blue whale is bigger …….. the whale shark.

a- that **b- than** **c- then** **d- the**

2- The African Elephant is ……. than the Asian one

a- the biggest **b- big** **c- biggest** **d- bigger**

3- The …….. bird is the ostrich.

a- big **b- bigger** **c- biggest** **d- bigger than**

4- The ……. birds is the bee hummingbird.

a- smaller than **b- smallest** **c- small** **d- smaller**

7) Order the words to make correct sentences: (2 marks)

1- her project – **She** – presented – class – to – the.

……. .

2- resources – are – natural – **What**?

……. .

8) Write a text of fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

(5 marks)

"Vertebrates"

Guiding elements: amphibians – water – birds – warm-blooded – reptiles – eggs – fish – gills

Answered in p.g.(77 : 79)

……

……

……

……

……

……

……

……

……

My world

Vocabulary

community	مجتمع صغير	scribe	كاتب
society	مجتمع	Hieroglyphs	اللغة الهيروغليفية
group	مجموعة	symbol	رمز
together	معاً	tomb	مقبرة
neighbor	جار	papyrus reeds	نبات البردي
neighborhood	جوار	governorate	محافظة
include	يشمل	countryside	الريف
village	قرية	folk music	الموسيقي الشعبيه
citizen	مواطن	traditional	تقليدي
citizenship	مواطنة	instrument	آلة موسيقية
history	تاريخ	folk dancing	الرقص الشعبي
separate	منفصل / يفصل	linked to	مرتبط بـ
area	منطقة	perform	يؤدي
Upper Egypt	صعيد مصر	carefully	بحرص
Lower Egypt	الوجه البحري	costume	زي
BCE	قبل الميلاد	dark	مظلم / غامق
Pharaoh	فرعون	plain	سادة
unite	يوحد	bright	فاتح
powerful	قوي	alongside	بطول ساحل
history	التاريخ	Bedouin	بدوي
Ancient Egypt	مصر القديمة (الفرعونية)	drum	طبلة
kingdom	مملكة	geography	جغرافيا
dynasties	الأسر الحاكمة	culture	ثقافة
rule	يحكم	tourist attractions	عوامل الجذب السياح
exhibition	معرض		

Unit 3

1 Choose the correct answer: (On Vocabulary)

1- We must all help our **(national – international – community – communication)**.

2- The people in our **(neighborhood – neighbor – citizenship – citizen)** are friendly and helpful.

3- A good **(neighborhood – neighbor – citizenship – citizen)** should follow the right way.

4- Many **(tours – tourists – tourist – tourism)** come to Egypt every year.

5- Egypt has a great **(chemistry – physics – math – history)**.

6- People in Ancient Egypt started to live near the Nile in 7000 **(BCE – Am – Pm – P.E)**.

7- Egypt became very **(power – powerful – weak – terrible)** when it controlled the Nile.

8- We must **(unit – unity – united – unite)** to face the challenges around us.

9- The king rules a **(government – kingdom – state – governorate)**.

10- In Ancient Egypt **(presidents – doctors – dynasties – scribes)** controlled Egypt for many years.

11- In the past **(presidents – museums- dynasties – scribes)** worked for the ruling dynasties.

12- The king is the man who **(writes – rules – roles – speaks)** the kingdom.

13- The Egyptians buried the dead in **(combs – bombs – dooms – tombs)**.

14- Hieroglyphs contain pictures and **(symbols – simple – samples – photos)**.

15- We keep valuable ancient things in **(markets – clubs – museums – schools)**.

16- There are 27 **(governments – governorates – streets – districts)** in Egypt.

17- We use a **(map – mop – model – medal)** to know the places around the country.

18- The **(city – capital – palace – countryside)** has a lot of farmland and farm animals.

19-Aswan is in **(high Egypt – middle Egypt – upper Egypt – lower Egypt)**.

20- Cairo is the **(capital – city – palace – countryside)** of Egypt.

21- The oud is a musical **(tool – machine – instrument – note)**.

22- **(Folk – International – Global – Musician)** music is our traditional music.

23- Nubian dancing is **(live – lively – life – lifeless)** and colorful.

24- In Tahtib, dancers use **(stocks – snacks – sticks – stickers)** and step quickly.

25- We study maps in **(geography – science – math – Arabic)**.

Grammar:

Possessive adjectives and pronouns:

Subject		Possessive adj. صفات الملكية		Possessive pronoun ضمائر الملكية	
I	انا	my	+ noun	mine	ملكي
You	انت	your		yours	ملكك
He	هو	his		his	ملكه
She	هي	her		hers	ملكها
It	هو-هي لغير العاقل	its			
We	نحن	our		ours	ملكنا
They	هم	their		theirs	ملكهم

-صفات الملكية يأتي بعدها الاسم المملوك.

-ضمائر الملكية لا يأتي بعدها اسم يمكنها ان تحل محل اسم / فاعل / مفعول

e.g.

1- **My** car is older than **yours**.

2- **Her** house is nearer than **yours**.

3- **Our** teacher is more helpful than **yours**.

4- I like **your** T-shirt.

5- Can I borrow **your** phone? I can't find **mine**.

Past simple:

يستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن حدث انتهي في الماضي

Key words:

yesterday	الأمس	**In ancient times**	في الاوقات القديمة
last	الماضي	**once**	مرة
ago	منذ	**Once upon a time**	ذات مرة
In the past	في الماضي		

Verb + ed / d / ied

يتكون من التصريف الثاني للفعل:

play → played visit → visited invite → invited
study → studied

توجد افعال شاذه:

go → went speak → spoke
come → came be → was/were

e.g.
1- I **studied** English **yesterday**.
2- My father **drove** me to school this morning.

Question form:

Question Word + did + subject + inf + ……..?

e.g.
1- Where **did** you **meet** your friend?
2- Why **did** she **get** up early?

Negative form:

(did not) didn't + inf. المصدر

1- People **didn't travel** by a plane in the past.
2- I **didn't go** to school yesterday.

used to - أعتاد أن

To express a past habit.

تستخدم **used to** للتعبير عن عادة قديمة (شيء لم يعد يحدث الآن).

Form:

Subject + used to + inf.

e.g.
1- My grandfather **used to** work for a great company.
2- We **used to** walk to school on foot. Now we take the bus.
3- The Ancient Egyptians **used to** write on stone.

1 Choose the correct answer: (On Grammar)

1- **(Mine – My – He – She)** father is a doctor.

2- Mother is looking for **(her – hers – his – their)** mobile.

3- Ali driving **(mine – her – his – hers)** car.

4- I asked for a pen and Samy gave me **(my – his – her – their)**.

5- The students opened **(their – theirs – they – them)** books and read.

6- **(We – Us – Them – Our)** house is near the river.

7- The internet has **(his – her – its – my)** advantages and disadvantages.

8- I helped my teacher and carried **(my – mine – her – its)** bag.

9- Mother used my mobile because she couldn't find **(her – hers – his – theirs)**.

10- Father goes to work in **(its – their – her – his)** car.

11- This is our school, it is **(ours – theirs – his – hers)**.

12- Yesterday, we **(clean – cleans – cleaning – cleaned)** our flat.

13- In the past, dynasties **(rule – ruled – rules – ruling)** Egypt for many years.

14- Mena **(join – joins – joined – joining)** the two separate areas of Egypt.

15- Scribes **(describe – describing – describes – described)** every thing that happened in their time.

16- Scribes **(worked – works – work – working)** for the ruling dynasties.

17- Taha Hussein **(write – writes – wrote – written)** many useful books.

18- The pharaohs **(used – use – uses – using)** papyrus for writing.

19- In 1970, engineers (**finish – finishes – finishing – finished)** the Aswan High Dam.

20- The Ancient Egyptians **(built – build – builds – building)** the pyramids.

2 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1- for – Egypt – years – controlled – many – **Dynasties**.

..... .

2- Egyptians – **The** – the – built – Pyramids – Ancient.

..... .

3- very – people – were – important – **Scribes**.

..... .

4- from – reeds – made – Egyptians – paper – **Ancient** – papyrus.

..... .

5- twenty-seven – are – governorates – **There** – Egypt – in.

..... .

6- the – in – is – Egypt – south – **Upper**.

..... .

7- next – the – to – are – mountains – **There** – high – river.

..... .

8- flooded – Nile – past – **In** – the – the – River.

..... .

9- **I** – music – playing – like.

..... .

10- instrument – a traditional – is – **The** – musical – rababa.

..... .

Exam 5 on unit 3:

Listening: (8 marks)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 marks)

1- Egypt is a country with a very long interesting …… .

a- Art **b- history** **c- Arabic** **d- Math**

2- Lower Egypt was in the …… .

a- south **b- west** **c- east** **d- north**

3- Upper Egypt was in the …… .

a- south **b- west** **c- east** **d- north**

4- …… joined these two parts to unite the country of Egypt.

a- Mena **b- Dina** **c- Lina** **d- Tina**

2) Listen and complete: (4 marks)

1- A …… is a group of people who live and work together.

2- It is a …… of people, places, activities, and ideas.

3- It …… my family, my friends, and my school.

4- It is more than your house, ……, or your neighborhood.

Reading: (11 marks)

3) Read and complete the text with words from the box: (3 marks)

(governorate – arms – Where – country)

Adel : Hello, Maged ! Where do you live?

Maged : Hi, Adel, I live in Upper Egypt.

Adel : **(1)** is Upper Egypt?

Maged : It is in the south.

Adel : What **(2)** do you live in?

Maged : I live in Aswan.

Adel : Great! What about Nubian dancing?

Maged : It's lovely and colorful. We move our **(3)** and feet to the rhythm of the music.

4) Read the following text and answer the questions below: (4 marks)

I'm Maged. My family is very big. I live with my dad, mom, grandparents. I have three sisters and three brothers. My father works un a school. He's a good teacher. My mom is a doctor. She likes helping sick people. I have a big room. I always study English in my room. I do my homework every day. All the toys in the room are mine. I like my parents and my school. I'm in primary four. I like English and Maths. I want to be a doctor when I grow up.

A) Choose the correct word:

1- English and ……. are Maged's favorite subjects.

a- Science **b-** Maths **c-** Arabic **c-** History

2- Maged's mom works in a …….

a- school **b-** restaurant **c-** hospital **d-** airport

B) Answer the following questions:

3- How many brothers and sisters does Maged have?

…… .

4- What's the job of Maged's father?

…… .

The reader: (4 marks)

5) A- Read and write T (true) or F (false):

1- Grandpa's eyes are not very good now. ()

2- Grandpa was one of the best artisans in Khayameya Street.()

B- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3- Grandpa can't see to ……..

a- spin **b-** dye **c-** weave **d-** sew

4- Grandpa was one of the ……. makers.

a- table **b-** tent **c-** curtain **d-** clothes

Writing: (11 marks)

6) Choose the correct answer form a, b, c or d: (4 marks)

1- bottle which is over there is empty.

a- Those **b- It** **c- That** **d- These**

2- are my pencils.

a- This **b- That** **c- The** **d- These**

3- It's your house. It's

a- ours **b- our** **c- your** **d- yours**

4- These shoes belong to Mazen. They are

a- his **b- hers** **c- yours** **d- mine**

7) Order the words to make correct sentences: (2 marks)

1- belong – to – **These** – Mazen – shoes.

..... .

2- make – **How** – you – darker – do – green?

..... .

8) Write a text of fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

(5 marks)

"Aswan"

Guiding words: live – Aswan – Upper Egypt – warm – winter – hot – summer – beautiful – city

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Exam 6 on unit 3:

Listening: (8 marks)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 marks)

1- Egypt has lots of traditional folk ……

a- dance **b- history** **c- music** **d- football**

2- …….. musicians from Upper Egypt plat Saidi music.

a- Folk **b- Music** **c- Acting** **d- Fact**

3- This type of music uses …….. instruments such as violins.

a- rope **b- wire** **c- thread** **d- string**

4- Singing and …… is also a key part.

a- kicking **b- drumming** **c- shouting** **d- hopping**

2) Listen and complete: (4 marks)

1- Raqs Assaya is a famous dance from the Saidi …….. tradition.

2- The Tahtib is from the …….. of Saidi music.

3- Dancers wear special ……

4- The costumes can be dark and ……. and patterned.

Reading: (11 marks)

3) Read and complete the dialogue with words from the box: (3 marks)

(Arctic – games – information - desert)

Mariam : Do you like to play a game, Nada?

Nada : Sure. I like **(1)** …… . What is it about?

Mariam : It's about the environments.

Nada : How will we play it?

Mariam : I will give you some **(2)** …….. to guess the answer.

Nada : Okay. Let's start.

Mariam : It's very dry. It can be hot or cold.

Nada : It's the **(3)** …… environment.

4) Read the following text and answer the questions below: (4 marks)

Egypt is a country with a very long and interesting history. People started to live near the Nile about 9,000 years ago, in 7000 BCE. At first, there were two separate areas. Lower Egypt was in the north, where the Nile joins the sea. Upper Egypt was in the south, where the Nile flows through the deserts of Africa.
In about 3200 BCE, one pharaoh, Mena joined these two parts to unite the country of Egypt. There are over 700 hieroglyphic symbols.

A) Choose the correct word:

1- Mena ……. the two parts of Egypt.

a- united **b- divided** **c- built** **d- destroyed**

2- The Nile flows through the …… of Africa.

a- soil **b- desert** **c- sea** **d- plants**

B) Answer the following questions:

3- What do you know about Egypt?

……. .

4- When did Egypt become united?

……. .

The reader: (4 marks)

5) A- Read and write T (true) or F (false):

1- Grandpa's mother taught him how to sew. ()

2- Grandpa wanted to be an engineer or a teacher. ()

B- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3- Grandpa's ……. taught his father how to sew.

a- grandfather **b- grandmother** **c- uncle** **d- mother**

4- You design and measure the ……

a- patterns **b- colors** **c- yarn** **d- dye**

Writing: (11 marks)

6) Choose the correct answer form a, b, c or d: (4 marks)

1- Those kids …… playing in the garden.

a- do **b- is** **c- are** **d- have**

2- My father bought …… toys for me.

a- that **b- those** **c- this** **d- then**

3- This is Aliaa's bag. It is ……

a- her **b- his** **c- hers** **d- theirs**

4- This is my car. It's ……

a- his **b- yours** **c- I** **d- mine**

7) Order the words to make correct sentences: (2 marks)

1- do – so that – I – understand – my homework – I.

…… .

2- you – any – Do – have – brothers?

…… .

8) Write a text of fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements: (5 marks)

"Music instruments"

Guiding elements: oud – string – oboe – wind – like – violin – Bedouin – rebaba

Answered in p.g.(77 : 79)

……

……

……

……

……

……

City and country

Vocabulary

rural	ريفي	craft	حرفة يدوية
urban	حضري	weave	ينسج
Greater Cairo	القاهرة الكبرى	spin	يغزل
Metropolitan	حضري	guide	دليل / مرشد
densely	بكثافة	artisan	حرفي
populated	مزدحمة بالسكان	dye	يصبغ
inhabitant	مسكن	yarn	غزل
congestion	ازدحام	synthetic	اصطناعي
pedestrian	مار	wonder	يتسآل
village	قرية	wrap	لف
sparsely	قليل	loom	نول
natural resources	موارد طبيعية	geometric patterns	أشكال هندسية
isolated	منعزل	pick out	ينتقي
close to	قريب من	goose	وزة
environment	بيئة	gosling	وزة صغيرة
grow	يزرع / ينمو	sack	شيكارة / جوال
grown up	كبير / بالغ	potter	صانع الآواني الفخارية
public transportation	النقل العام	The Mediterranean Sea	البحر الأبيض المتوسط
difference	اختلاف / فرق	industry	صناعة
in common	مشترك / شائع	port	ميناء
irrigation	الري	apartment	شقة
mountain	جبل	wherever	أي مكان
copper	نحاس	description	وصف
coal	فحم	smart growth	النمو الذكي
traditional	تقليدي	housing	الإسكان
person	شخص		

1 Choose the correct answer: (On Vocabulary)

1- Cairo is a big **(city – village – country – street)**. It is the capital of Egypt.

2- Egypt has many cities as well as many **(countries – continents – villages – oceans)**.

3- Life in the city is **(calm – busy – quiet – basic)**.

4- The city is **(calmly – slowly – sparsely – densely)** populated.

5- The house is in the desert. It is **(isolated – densely – sparsely – insulated)**.

6- The village is a **(ordinary – extra ordinary – traditional – busy)** place.

7- Artisans make things in a **(farm – workshop – shop – café)**.

8- There are farm animals and farmlands in **(cities – space – water – villages)**.

9- There are no babies in the family, They are all **(grow – grew – grown – grown up)**.

10- We got wool from **(sheep – cows – buffaloes – geese)**.

11- **(Sheep – Cows – Buffaloes – Geese)** lay eggs.

12- The goose looks after its (**goslings – ducklings – chicks – calf)**.

13- Coal, aluminum and copper are all natural (**measure – sources – resources – stories)**.

14- People get **(birds – meat – eggs – fish)** from the water.

15- He makes beautiful carpets. He is a very good **(teacher – carpenter – farmer – artisan)**.

16- They aren't like each other, there is a big **(different – difference – similarity – bridge)** between them.

17- More than half of the world's **(population – pollution – manipulation – co-operation)** lives in cities.

18- They use a machine called a **(moon – loom – room – comb)** to make carpets.

19- Spinning and **(waving – moving – weaving – leaving)** is a great industry in Egypt.

20- The triangle, the square and the rectangle are **(algebra – geometric – mathematic – calculation)** patterns.

Grammar: Plural – الجمع

نستخدم **s / es / ies**:

١- لتحويل الاسم من مفرد الي جمع.

٢- يستخدم **"es"** عندما ينتهي الاسم بحرف **(o – ss – sh – x – ch)**.

٣- نستخدم **"ies"** عندما ينتهي الاسم بحرف **"Y"** مسبوق بحرف ساكن.

٤- نستخدم **"ves"** عندما ينتهي الاسم بحرف **"f / fe"** .

e.g.

boy → boys		girl → girls			
cargo → Cargoes		watch → watches		loaf → loaves	
baby → babies		lady → ladies		leaf → leaves	

Irregular plurals: هناك اسماء تشذ عن هذه القاعدة:

man → men		woman → women		goose → geese	
child → children		fish → fish		sheep → sheep	
ox → oxen		mouse → mice			

Conjunctions:

after	بعد	**before**	قبل
as soon as	بمجرد ان	**although**	بالرغم من
even though	بالرغم من	**so that**	لكي
while	بينما	**so**	لهذا
because	لأن	**but**	لكن

You can divide a whole thing into two halves or three thirds or four quarters …. etc.



quarter ¼ **half** ½ **third** 1/3 **fifth** 1/5

1 Choose the correct answer: (On Grammar)

1- Some **(child – childs – children – childish)** are playing in the playground.

2- I went to the baker's and bought three **(loaf – leaves – lives – loaves)** of bread.

3- Men and **(woman – womans – women – girls)** are grown up.

4- The **(goslings – goose – duck – her)** followed their mother.

5- They dye the wool **(after – before – while – so)** they can use it.

6- He went to work **(before – after – although – because)** he was ill.

7- He stayed up late **(so – because – although – before)** he was tired in the morning.

8- **(Until – So – Before – As soon as)** our food is ready, we can have dinner.

9- We do exercises **(so that – as soon as – after – though)** we can be fit.

10- I say thank you **(so – before – after – though)** someone helps me.

11- **(Before – As soon as – Although – Even though)** the yarn is dry, they can use it to weave a carpet.

12- They have to clean, wash and dry the wool **(after – as soon as – although – before)** they can use it.

13- I study hard **(after – as soon as – so that – while)** I can get were high marks.

14- They worked **(while – so that – although – even though)** were watching them.

15- I prefer light colors **(after – before – so that – but)** my sister prefers dark colors.

16- The loaf of bread has two **(quarters – thirds – halves – fifths)**.

17- The potter made 100 pots and sold 32 so he has **(86 – 68 – 66 – 88)** left.

18- The farmer had 240 sheep and he divided them among his four sons, so each son got **(80 – 70 – 50 – 60)** sheep.

19- Amir grew 693 kilos of potatoes. He can put 3 kilos in each bag, so he needs **(231 – 321 – 123 – 312)** bags.

20- If you divide half a loaf between two brothers, each one gets a **(half – third – fifth – quarter)** of a loaf.

2 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1- living – countryside – like – the – **I** – in.

..... .

2- very – are – crowded – **Cities**.

..... .

3- past – the – look for – from – things – **Archaeologists.**

..... .

4- are – populated – **villages** – sparsely.

..... .

5- goslings – swim – **Can** – geese – and?

..... .

6- artisans – carpets – make – very good – **Egyptians** .

..... .

7- bright – like – colors – **I**.

..... .

8- divide – get – by – we – we – **If** – 525 – 35 – 15.

..... .

9- multiply – get – by – we – we – **If** – 8 – 288 – 36.

..... .

10- keep – crops – animals – grow – **Farmers** – and.

..... .

Exam 7 on unit 4:

Listening: (8 marks)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 marks)

1- Ahmed lives in a …… village on the Nile.
a- big **b- small** **c- macro** **d- micro**
2- Ahmed's dad is a ……
a- vet **b- teacher** **c- doctor** **d- farmer**
3- In the village, there are ……. sheep.
a- ten **b- none** **c- nine** **d- seven**
4- We can see …….. in a small village on the river.
a- ducks **b- geese** **c- birds** **d- ducks and geese**

2) Listen and complete: (4 marks)

1- Giza is a metropolitan ……..
2- Giza is a ……. populated city.
3- You should be careful because of …….. jam.
4- The …… and Sphinx are ancient and famous in Giza.

Reading: (11 marks)

3) Read and complete the text with words from the box: (3 marks)

(posts – private – account – goes)

Doaa : How old do you have to be to open a social media account?
Rehab : Thirteen years old.
Doaa : Why does your brother want to have a social media **(1)** ……..……?
Rehab : Because his friend, Wael, has one.
Doaa : What does Wael use his social media account for?
Rehab : He **(2)**……. Videos and he makes new friends online.
Doaa : How can you make your account safer?
Rehab : By making the page **(3)**…….. and turned off the comments.

4) Read the following text and answer the questions below: (4 marks)

Before the artisans can weave the carpets, they have to make the warp. The warp is the structure of the carpet. They make the warp using spung Egyptian cotton. Later, they use the warp and the dyed wool to make beautiful carpets. The artisans make the carpets by hand using a machine called a loom. They add the different colored yarn to make geometric patterns.

A) Choose the correct word:

1- Artisans used colored yarn to make …….. pattern.

a- math **b- geometric** **c- Arabic** **d- English**

2- To make beautiful carpets, they …….. the wool.

a- die **b- lie** **c- dye** **d- comp**

B) Answer the following questions:

3- What should we do to protect the Earth?

…… .

4- What does the underline pronoun “them” refer to?

…… .

The reader: (4 marks)

5) A- Read and write T (true) or F (false):

1- Grandpa measured and cut all the pieces by machine. ()

2- Grandpa likes sewing lotus flowers and geometric patterns best. ()

B- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3- The big picture with all the flowers took grandpa nearly four …….

a- days **b- weeks** **c- months** **d- years**

4- Zeinab wants to …….. how to sew.

a- teach **b- learn** **c- escape** **d- watch.**

Writing: (11 marks)

6) Choose the correct answer form a, b, c or d: (4 marks)

1- Many ……. like fries.

a- people **b- child** **c- adult** **d- person**

2- My ……. hurt.

a- feet **b- foot** **c- tooth** **d- eye**

3- Malak studies hard ……. she can get high marks.

a- even though **b- so that** **c- every time** **d- while**

4- I write my lesson …….. the teacher is talking.

a- so that **b- after** **c- before** **d- while**

7) Order the words to make correct sentences: (2 marks)

1- mammals – **Bats** – the only – fly – are – that.

……. .

2- lay – vertebrates – **Which** – eggs?

……. .

8) Write a text of fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

(5 marks)

"Cairo"

Guiding words: city – big – like – city – lots – buildings – densely – population – lots – services

……

……

……

……

……

……

Exam 8 on unit 4:

Listening: (8 marks)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 marks)

1- Waleed lives in a small village on the ……

a- lake **b- ocean** **c- sea** **d- Nile**

2- -He grows ……., potatoes, dates, and onions.

a- bananas **b- tomatoes** **c- mangoes** **d- figs**

3- There are six ……. and two buffaloes.

a- goats **b- hippos** **c- sheep** **d- donkeys**

4- You can see ……. in the street.

a- cats **b- dogs** **c- lizards** **d- snakes**

2) Listen and complete: (4 marks)

1- Fareeda lives in ……. Cairo.

2- It's a metropolitan area and ……. populated.

3- There are more than …… million inhabitants.

4- If you are a ……., you have to be very careful.

Reading: (11 marks)

3) Read and complete the dialogue with words from the box: (3 marks)

(mess – made – dropped – did)

In Ramadan, we have a feast in the evening at sunset. There's always lots of delicious food! Last year, my mom …….. kunafa, with sweet pastry. We had it with soft cheese. While I was helping her in the kitchen, I ……. the sugar! We quickly cleaned up the ……. and then finished cooking. That night, there were lots of different things to eat, but the kunafa was my favorite!

4) Read the following text and answer the questions below: (4 marks)

Games and sports are very important in our life. A sportsman can enjoy life fully and live to an old age. To become efficient in sports, you must practice them constantly. Sports and games are encouraged everywhere in Egypt. Sports make our bodies strong, prevent us from getting too fat and keep us healthy.
Sports and games are also useful for character training. In their lessons at school, pupils may love of one's country, but if each of them learns to work for his team on the football field, he will later find it natural to work for the good of his country.

A) Choose the correct word:

1- Sports help us to be …… .

a- **fat** b- **thin** c- **healthy** d- **ill**

2- Sports and games are …… for character training.

a- **good** b- **bad** c- **little** d- **few**

B) Answer the following questions:

3- What should you do to be efficient in sports?

…… .

4- What should pupils learn at school?

…… .

The reader: (4 marks)

5) A- Read and write T (true) or F (false):

1- Zeinab loves the big picture with all the flowers. ()

2- Grandpa measured and cut all the pieces by hand. ()

B- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3- Zeinab and her grandfather visited the ……..

a- **shop** b- **farm** c- **cave** d- **park**

4- Grandpa also likes sewing …….

a- **insects** b- **animals** c- **fish** d- **birds**

Writing: (11 marks)

6) Choose the correct answer form a, b, c or d: (4 marks)

1- My grandmother has four …… .

a- daughter **b- children** **c- child** **d- baby**

2- Cats like to catch …… .

a- mice **b- goose** **c- duck** **d- mouse**

3- …… the yarn is dry, they can use it to weave a carpet.

a- Before **b- After** **c- As soon as** **d- So that**

4- …… the artisans can weave the carpets, they have to make the warp.

a- As soon as **b- Before** **c- While** **d- After**

7) Order the words to make correct sentences: (2 marks)

1- are – buffaloes – six – sheep – **There** – and – two.

…… .

2- you – sisters – have – **Do** – any – brothers – or?

…… .

8) Write a text of fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements: (5 marks)

"A farmer"

Guiding elements: grandpa – farmer – grow – food – keep – animals – geese – beautiful – lots – hens

Answered in p.g.(77 : 79)

……

……

……

……

……

……

Unit 5

Resources in our world

Vocabulary

natural	طبيعي	climate	المناخ
resources	موارد	geology	علم الجيولوجيا
material	مادة خام	geologist	عالم جيولوجي
purpose	غرض	energy	طاقة
made of	مصنوع من	electricity	الكهرباء
construct	مبني / يبني / يشيد	solar farm	محطة طاقة شمسية
building	مبني	solar panel	الواح الطاقة الشمسية
bridge	كوبري	sunshine	ضوء الشمس
forest	غابة	space	فضاء
petroleum	بترول	destroy	يدمر
gold	ذهب	transfer	تحول
silver	فضة	mechanical	ميكانيكي
made up of	مكون من	water turbine	توربين مائي
soil	تربة	tidal turbine	توربين بحري
renewable	متجدد	talent	موهبة
non-renewable	غير متجدد	promotion	ترقية
replace	يستبدل	career	مهنة
run out	ينفذ	skill	مهارة
once	بمجرد	experience	خبرة
use .. up	يستنفذ	teamwork	العمل الجماعي
anymore	المزيد	responsible	مسئول
minerals	معادن	member	عضو
fossil	حفريات	sensitive	حساس
fuel	وقود	rely on	يعتمد علي
coal	الفحم	collaborate	يتعاون
natural gas	الغاز الطبيعي	reliable	يعتمد عليه
crude oil well	بئر بترول خام	respect	يحترم / احترام
global warming	الاحتباس الحراري	supportive	مساند / داعم
green house	صوب زراعية	we are hiring	مطلوب للتعيين

1 Choose the correct answer: (On Vocabulary)

1- Water, air, soil and mineral are all **(normal – abnormal – natural – unnatural)** resources.
2- The **(air – water – soil – environment)** is everything around us and we must keep it.
3- We get **(metal – wood – carpet – blanket)** from forests.
4- **(Wood – Metal – Plastic – Cotton)** is made from petroleum.
5- The sun is a **(new – renew – renewable – non-renewable)** source of energy.
6- Coal, oil, petrol and gas are all **(fool – fuels – floats – fauls)**.
7- Rings and necklaces are made of **(wood – iron – petroleum – gold)**.
8- Scientists study **(fossils – fuels – energy – solar panel)** to know the history of living creatures.
9- We can make **(electric – electrical – electronic – electricity)** out of sunshine.
10- A solar **(system – panel – ring – eclipse)** is used to make solar power.
11- Pollution causes **(solar power – global – global movement – global warming)**.
12- **(Renewable – New – Modern – Non-renewable)** sources of energy will run out someday.
13- Cars run on **(water – air – petrol – coal)**.
14- We make electricity from sunshine in a solar **(farm – from – form – forum)**.
15- **(Solar – Renewable – Water – Fossil)** fuels produce fumes and cause pollution.
16- We can't **(destroy – make – produce – reproduce)** energy.
17- After he got the **(experience – talent – promotion – skill)**, he became the manager.
18- Mohamed Salah is a famous player because he has got a great **(talent – promotion – job – calm)**.
19- My uncle always encourages me. He is very **(crazy – lazy – negative – supportive)**.
20- Teamwork always leads to **(failure – success – sad – Alexandria)**.

Present simple:

- Is used to express facts and habits.

- يستخدم للتعبير عن الحقائق والعادات.

- Form:

I / You / We / They + inf — **negative: don't + inf.**

He / She / It + verb + s / es / ies — **negative: doesn't + inf.**

Verb to be:

I	→	am
He/She/It	→	is
We/You/They	→	are

Verb to have:

I	→	have
He/She/It	→	has
We/You/They	→	have

Verb to do:

I	→	do
He/She/It	→	does
We/You/They	→	do

- Keywords:

always	دائماً	usually	عادةً
sometimes	احياناً	often	غالبا
every	كل	never	أبداً

- Examples:

1- I **go** to the cinema every month.
2- My friend **goes** to the cinema with me.
3- We **study** English every day.
4- My brother **studies** Math after school.
5- I don't **waste** my time.
6- My mother **doesn't** like watching TV.
7- Where **does** your father work?
8- He **works** in Cairo.

1 Choose the correct answer: (On Grammar)

1- A pilot **(fly – flies – flown – flying)** a plane.

2- She sometimes **(helpful – help – helping – helps)** her mother in the kitchen.

3- They **(am – is – are – be)** students.

4- My father **(watch – watches – watching – am watching)** TV in the evening.

5- The baby **(cries – cry – cried – crying)** when she's hungry.

6- My sister **(wash – washes – washing – watch)** her scarf in the afternoon.

7- Magdy **(raise – raising – raise – raises)** his hand when he finishes his exercise.

8- Our cat **(drinks – drink – drank – drinking)** a lot of water when it is hot outside.

9- I **(go – went – gone – going)** to the school every day.

10- We usually **(sleep - study - play - walk)** Maths.

11- My father **(didn't - don't - aren't - doesn't)** like video games.

12- My sister **(wash – washing – washes – watch)** the dishes after meals.

13- Sometimes, she **(help – helps – helping – helped)** her mom make dinner.

14- She **(telephone – telephones – telephoning – telephoned)** her friends in the afternoon.

15- Gameela **(wake – woke – awake – wakes)** up for school at 7 o'clock.

16- She **(brush – brushes – brushed – brushing)** her teeth then she has breakfast.

17- She **(has – have – having – is)** her breakfast with her family.

18- What **(is – has – have – does)** Omar do in the club?

19- Where **(are – do – have – has)** you go every day?

20- (Do – Are – Does – Is) you study Math at school?

2 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1- source – **The** sun – of – a great – a – is – energy.

..... .

2- comes – forests – from – **Wood**.

..... .

3- from – **Plastic** – made – petroleum – is.

..... .

4- in – live – water – **Fish**.

..... .

5- grow – use – to – plants – **We** – water.

..... .

6- fuel – is – a – **Coal** – fossil.

..... .

7- is – dangerous – warming – very – **Global**.

..... .

8- teeth – **She** – her – day – brushes – every.

..... .

9- cries – hungry – is – she – **The** baby – when.

..... .

10- hot – drink – water – **We** – is – a lot of – it – when.

..... .

Exam 9 on unit 5:

Listening: (8 marks)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 marks)

1- Fossil fuels are …… resources.
a- renewable **b- non-renewable** **c- old** **d- modern**
2- Oil, coal and natural gas are …….. fuels.
a- fossil **b- made** **c- soil** **d- sea**
3- We get petroleum from …… oil.
a- soft **b- hard** **c- thick** **d- crude**
4- Natural gas is used in our homes for …….. and cooking.
a- building **b- painting** **c- heating** **d- drawing**

2) Listen and complete: (4 marks)

1- The water is a …….. Resource.
2- The ground is made up of ……..
3- Potatoes are grown in the ……
4- Renewable resources never …….. Out.

Reading: (11 marks)

3) Read and complete the text with words from the box: (3 marks)

(platform – website – account – information)

Nada: Do you know that there are different ways to send messages?

Huda: Yes, I do.

Nada: What do you need to send an email?

Huda: I must have an email **(1)** …… to send messages.

Nada: Where can you send and instant message?

Huda: I can send it on social media **(2)** …… .

Nada: Why do people give presentations?

Huda: To share **(3)**…… about something by talking about it.

4) Read the following text and answer the questions below: (4 marks)

Natural resources are materials that we get from nature. People use these materials for different purposes. If you look around your classroom, you will probably see different types of them. What is your school made of? We use stone to construct buildings, bridges, and sometimes schools too. What are you sitting on right now? Is it made of wood? Forests, and the wood we get from them, are another important natura resource. Is anything made of plastic in your classroom? Plastic is made from petroleum, which is …… that's right – a natural resource!

A) Choose the correct answer:

1- We use stone to ……. buildings and bridges.
a- construct **b- paint** **c- draw** **d- destroy**

2- We have different …… of natural resources.
a- shelves **b- desk** **c- kinds** **d- buildings**

B) Answer the following questions:

3- Where can we get natural resources?

…… .

4- From what do we make plastic?

…… .

The reader: (4 marks)

5) A- Read and write T (true) or F (false):

1- Grandpa was one of the Tent Makers. ()

2- The big picture is made of thousand and thousands of small stitches.()

B- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3- Grandpa's …….. are not very good now.
a- ears **b- eyes** **c- hands** **d- legs**

4- ……. . can help show use all how to sew. She makes beautiful things.
a- Lobna **b- Doha** **c- Engy** **d- Rasha**

Writing: (11 marks)

6) Choose the correct answer form a, b, c or d: (4 marks)

1- Someone is playing ……. guitar.
a- his **b- my** **c- her** **d- their**

2- She ……. her teeth every day.
a- is brush **b- brush** **c- brushes** **d- brushing**

3- Each of the children likes ……. new desk.
a- our **b- their** **c- her** **d- your**

4- They ……. to the park on Friday.
a- go **b- are going** **c- goes** **d- going**

7) Order the words to make correct sentences: (2 marks)

1- source – sun – of – a great – **The** – is – energy.
……. .

2- comes – forests – from – **Wood**.
……. .

8) Write a text of fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

(5 marks)

"Renewable resources"

Guiding words: three – renewable – sun – heat – wind – energy – water – natural – never – run out

Answered in p.g.(77 : 79)

……
……
……
……
……
……
……
……

Let's work

Vocabulary

transportation	النقل	discuss	يناقش
air	الهواء	discussion	مناقشة
by air	جواً	podcast	تدوين صوتي
pipe	ماسورة	host	مضيف
rail	قضبان	Ancient Egyptians	قدماء المصريين
well	بئر	tech jobs	وظائف تكنولوجية
ferry	معدية	VR headset	نظارة واقع افتراضي
extra	زيادة / زائد	specific	محدد
Mars	المريخ	ignore	يتجاهل
vacation	اجازة	ads	اعلانات
self-driving	ذاتية القيادة	create	يصنع
prediction	توقع	personal	شخصي
description	وصف	obvious	واضح
flying taxi	التاكسي الطائر	container	حاوية
negative	سلبي	positive	ايجابي

1 Choose the correct answer: (On Vocabulary)

1- We walk to school, we go to school **(by bus – on foot – by taxi – by train)**.

2- In the past people travelled around the world by **(bus – car – ship – rocket)**.

3- In the desert people use **(camels – bikes – ships – boats)** to move.

4- We travelled to London by air. This means by **(bus – plane – ship – car)**.

5- You can cross the river by **(bus – ferry – car – foot)**.

6- People travel into space by **(plane – bus – ferry – rocket)**.

7- In the future, airplanes will use **(solar – lunar – sun – moon)** energy.
8- A **(computer – engine – robot – TV)** is a machine that does important and dangerous work for us.
9- To get the best search results use **(short – long – specific – medium)** words.
10- Choose the **(first – best – last – biggest)** option in the search box.
11- You should use the **(child – school – man – safe)** search option in your browser.
12- The ship went **(long – along – short – tall)** the Suez Canal.
13- Goods are carried on **(box – bag – case – container)** ships.
14- Don't tell your **(password – crossword – secret word – public word)** to anyone.
15- Your password should be **(weak – tall – strong – high)**.

Grammar:

Future simple:

يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث سوف يحدث في المستقبل.

- Form:

Subject. + will + inf.

- Keywords:

tomorrow	**غداً**	**next**	**القادم**
In the future	**في المستقبل**	**soon**	**قريبًا**

Note: will not = won't

e.g.

1- I **will buy** a new bike **tomorrow**.
2- **Next week,** my father **will travel** to Alex.
3- We **won't stay** up late.
4- They **won't come** with us to the party.
5- My mother **will help** me with my homework.
6- She **won't cook** for lunch, we will order pizza.

1 Choose the correct answer: (On Grammar)

1- I **(listen – will listen – listened – listening)** to music this afternoon.

2- My father will **(comes – came – coming – come)** home after work.

3- She is not ready, she **(will – won't – is – does)** come with us.

4- They will play a match **(last week – yesterday – tomorrow – in 2010)**.

5- She will **(make – makes – made – making)** a new dress.

6- The students **(will go – go – went – goes)** on a trip next week.

7- We **(will go – won't go – go – goes)** to school tomorrow. It is a holiday.

8- Plane will **(uses – used – useful – use)** solar energy in the future.

9- She is sick. She **(won't – will – is – are)** come with us.

10- People will **(travel – traveling – travels – travelled)** to space in the future.

2 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1- river – by – the – **We** – ferry – cross.

.....

2- past – by – the – ship – travelled – **People** – in.

.....

3- plane – train – than – faster – **The** – the – is.

.....

4- ever – on – travelled – you – train – **Have** – a?

.....

5- future – trains – will – **Robots** – drive – the – in.

.....

6- the – sit – won't – window – by – **He**.

.....

7- take – Aswan – train – to – **Will** – they – a?

.....

8- a ship – travel – on – **She** – will.

.....

9- strong – make – a – password – **You** – should.

.....

10- to – give – data – **Don't** – personal – your – anyone.

.....

Exam 10 on unit 6:

Listening: (8 marks)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 marks)

1- The first train line in Egypt opened in …… .
a- 1844 **b- 1855** **c- 1854** **d- 1954**
2- The train traveled from …… to Alexandria.
a- Luxor **b- Giza** **c- Aswan** **d- Cairo**
3- The Suez …… is now 193 kilometers long.
a- Canal **b- River** **c- Ocean** **d- Lake**
4- It was started in …… and it took ten years to finish it.
a- 1959 **b- 1899** **c- 1859** **d- 1855**

2) Listen and complete: (4 marks)

1- Heba looked out of the ……
2- The ships were going along the …… Canal.
3- The ships were so ……
4- It must be so fun to be a ship's ……

Reading: (11 marks)

3) Read and complete the dialogue with words from the box: (3 marks)

(When – club – what time – volleyball)

Mostafa : Hi! Medhat. How are you?
Medhat : Hello! Mostafa. I'm fine.
Mostafa : Where will you go tomorrow?
Medhat : I will go to the **(1)**
Mostafa : What will you do at the club?
Medhat : I will play **(2)**
Mostafa : **(3)** will you be back?
Medhat : I'll be back at five o'clock.

4) Read the following text and answer the questions below: (4 marks)

Mr. John and his wife Sara came from London with their three children Marco, Christina and Maro last winter. They were all interested in visiting ancient monuments in Egypt. Their elder son, Marco is fifteen years old and Maro is ten years and their sister is twelve years old. They spent fourteen days in Egypt in a five Stars Hotel. The family enjoyed the fine warm and sunny weather. They visited the Egyptian Museum, the Pyramids, the Sphinx, Luxor and Aswan. They bought beautiful presents for their relatives and returned home very happy.

A) Choose the correct word:

1- The family visited Egypt in ……..

a- **December** b- **April** c- **June** d- **September**

2- The family stayed in Egypt for …….. weeks.

a- **three** b- **four** c- **two** d- **five**

B) Answer the following questions:

3- What's the nationality of the family?

…… .

4- How many persons are there in the family?

…… .

The reader: (4 marks)

5) A- Read and write T (true) or F (false):

1- No one came to watch Grandpa and the girls. ()

2- Zeinab's friends are clever. ()

B- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3- A lot of people went to …… about Khayameya.

a- **see** b- **learn** c- **make** d- **teach**

4- Khayameya …… Is traveling all summer.

a- **club** b- **school** c- **park** d- **group**

Writing: (11 marks)

6) Choose the correct answer form a, b, c or d: (4 marks)

1- My uncle will ……. lunch with us tomorrow.
a- has **b- have** **c- had** **d- having**

2- They won't …… with us to the park.
a- come **b- came** **c- coming** **d- comes**

3- She traveled to Luxor …… train.
a- at **b- in** **c- by** **d- on**

4- Will she …….. her new dress at the party?
a- wearing **b- wore** **c- wears** **d- wear**

7) Order the words to make correct sentences: (2 marks)

1- river – by – the – **We** – ferry – cross.
…… .

2- past – by – the – ship – travelled – **People** – in.
…… .

8) Write a text of fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements: (5 marks)

"Alexandria"

Guiding words: port city – Roman theatre – Qaitbay Citadel – capital city – first Library of Alexandria – famous – all over the world

……
……
……
……
……
……
……
……

S

The Reader

1- Khayameya Summer:

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False): Page (110 -111) SB.

1- Zeinab was bored. ()
2- It was the third week of the summer holiday. ()
3- Grandpa is sad at the moment. ()
4- Zeinab went to Grandpa by car. ()
5- Zeinab's grandparents were very pleased to see her. ()
6- It was the second week of the summer holiday. ()
7- Zeinab went to grandpa by train. ()
8- Grandpa's eyes are not very good now. ()
9- Grandpa wants to stop making things. ()
10- Grandpa can't see to watch TV. ()
11- Grandpa was one of the tent makers. ()
12- Grandpa was one of the best artisans in Khayameya Street. ()
13- Grandpa can't see to sew. ()
14- Grandpa makes such beautiful things. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1- Zeinab was …… .
a- excited b- bored c- amazed d- happy
2- It was the ……week of the summer.
a- first b- second c- third d- fourth
3- Zeinab said, 'Let's go visit ……'
a- grandma b- uncle c- cousins d- grandpa
4- Grandpa is …… at the moment. Zeinab can help him.
a- pleased b- happy c- sad d- excited

5- Zeinab got off the …… .

a- car b- bus c- train d- ferry

6- Grandpa's …… are not very good now.

a- ears b- eyes c- hands d- legs

7- It's …… for grandpa to work.

a- easy b- difficult c- amazing d- interesting

8- Grandpa can't see to …… .

a- spin b- dye c- weave d- sew

9- Grandpa was one of the …… makers.

a- carpet b- tent c- curtain d- clothes

10- Grandpa was one of the best …… in Khayameya Street.

a- artisans b- seller c- shopkeepers d- engineers

3 Read and write T (True) or F (False): Page (112-113) SB.

1- Zeinab and her grandpa visited the museum. ()

2- Zeinab loves the big picture with all the flowers. ()

3- Zeinab and her grandpa visited the shop. ()

4- The big picture with all the flowers took grandpa nearly four weeks. ()

5- The big picture is made of thousands and thousands of small stitches. ()

6- Grandpa measured and cut all of the pieces by machine. ()

7- The big picture with all the flowers took grandpa nearly four months. ()

8- Grandpa measured and cut all the pieces by hand. ()

9- Grandpa likes sewing lotus flowers and geometric patterns.()

10- Grandpa also likes sewing animals. ()

11- Zeinab wishes she could sew and help grandpa. ()

12- Grandpa also likes sewing birds. ()

13- Zeinab wants to learn to sew. ()

14- Grandpa doesn't want to teach Zeinab to sew. ()

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1- Zeinab and her grandfather visited the …… .

a- shop **b-** farm **c-** cave **d-** park

2- The big picture with all the flowers took grandpa nearly four …… .

a- days **b-** weeks **c-** months **d-** years

3- The big picture with all the flowers is made of thousands of small …… .

a- dots **b-** stitches **c-** string **d-** yarn

4- Grandpa measured and cut all the pieces by …… .

a- machine **b-** leg **c-** hand **d-** eyes

5- Grandpa also likes sewing …… .

a- insects **b-** animals **c-** fish **d-** birds

6- Zeinab wants to …… how to sew.

a- teach **b-** learn **c-** escape **d-** watch

7- It's …… for grandpa because his eyes aren't good now.

a- sad **b-** good **c-** happy **d-** pleased

5 Read and write T (True) or F (False): Page (114–115) SB.

1- Grandpa's mother taught him how to sew. ()
2- Grandpa wanted to be an engineer or a teacher. ()
3- Grandpa loves his job. ()
4- Grandpa designs and measures the patterns. ()
5- Grandpa's father taught him how to sew. ()
6- Grandpa choose the colors. ()
7- Zeinab's friends don't want to learn about Khayameya. ()
8- Lobna is great at math and working out problems. ()
9- Rasha invents things in all time and has good ideas. ()
10- Doha makes amazing art. ()
11- Engy can help show us all how to sew. She makes beautiful things.()

6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1- Grandpa's …… taught him how to sew.
a- grandfather b- grandmother c- father d- mother
2- Grandpa wanted to be an engineer or a …… .
a- doctor b- teacher c- designer d- officer
3- Grandpa's …… taught his father how to sew.
a- grandfather b- grandmother c- uncle d- mother
4- You design and measure the …… .
a- patterns b- colors c- yarn d- dye
5- Grandpa is good at …… .
a- Arabic b- English c- Science d- Math
6- Zeinab's friends want to learn about ……, too.
a- carpets b- Khayameya c- art d- colors

7- …… can help show us all how to sew. She makes beautiful things.

a- Lobna b- Doha c- Engy d- Rasha

8- …… is great at math and working out problems.

a- Lobna b- Doha c- Engy d- Rasha

9- …… makes amazing art.

a- Lobna b- Doha c- Engy d- Rasha

10- …… invents things all the time and has good ideas.

a- Lobna b- Doha c- Engy d- Rasha

7 Read and write T (True) or F (False): Page (116-117) SB.

1- Grandfather thanked the girls for coming. ()

2- They make the patterns with two layers of cotton. ()

3- They make the patterns with three layers of wool. ()

4- They make the patterns with three layers of cotton. ()

5- Zeinab has such clever friends. ()

6- The girls like learning new things, and they have a great teacher. ()

8 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1- They make the patterns …… layers of cotton.

a- one b- two c- three d- four

2- They make the patterns with three layers of …… .

a- leather b- cotton c- wood d- plastic

3- Zeinab's friends are …… .

a- clever b- lazy c- sleepy d- careless

4- Zeinab's friends like learning …… things

a- old b- ancient c- new d- bad

9 Read and write T (True) or F (False): Page (118-119) SB.

1- Grandpa invited people to join them. ()

2- Lots of people want to learn about Khayameya. ()

3- People in many places all around Egypt want Grandpa to teach them. ()

4- Khayameya School is traveling all winter. ()

5- Khayameya school is travelling all summer. ()

6- The girls like learning new things, and they have a great teacher. ()

7- What a wonderful summer holiday! ()

10 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1- Lots of people want to …… about Khayameya.

a- teach b- design c- read d- learn

2- People in many places around …… want grandpa to teach them.

a- Ismailia b- Tanta c- Marsa Matrouh d- Egypt

3- Khayameya …… is traveling all summer.

a- Tent b- School c- Classroom d- City

4- What a wonderful …… holiday.

a- fall b- spring c- winter d- summer

R

2- The Reader - Coral Reefs:

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False): What is a coral reef?

1- Coral reefs are made of plants. ()

2- Coral reefs are made of thousands of tiny invertebrates, called polyps. ()

3- Coral polyps move from a place to another. ()

4-Coral polyps don't move – they stay in the same place all the time. ()

5- Coral polyps grow very slowly. ()

6- Coral polyps grow very quickly. ()

7- Coral polyps can sometimes grow for more than ten thousand years. ()

8- Most coral polyps don't have a color. ()

9- Coral polyps have clear bodies and their exoskeletons are white. ()

10- The color of a coral polyps comes from tiny algae that live inside the polyps. ()

11- Coral polyps can only live in the Atlantic Ocean. ()

12- Coral polyps only live in warm water. ()

13- Coral polyps only live in cold water. ()

14- Coral polyps can live in all the oceans around the world. ()

15- Coral polyps can live in very cold water and in warm seas. ()

16- Reefs need sunlight to live and to grow. ()

17- Coral reefs are homes for many other animals. ()

18- Tropical fish often have bright colors so they can hide safely in a reef. ()

19- The unusual shapes of coral reefs also give lots of places to hide. ()

20- The Red Sea coral reef is the largest coral reef system in the world. ()

21- The Red Sea coral reef is the largest coral reef system in Africa. ()

22- The Red Sea coral reef is the second largest reef system in the world. ()

23- The Red Sea coral reef is the third largest reef system in the world. ()

24- The Red Sea coral reef is about 4,000 kilometers long. ()

25- The Red Sea coral reef covers over 2,000 square kilometers. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1- Coral reefs are made of thousands of tiny …… .

a- plants b- vertebrates c- invertebrates d- reptiles

2- Coral polyps grow …… .

a- fast b- quickly c- amazingly d- slowly

3- Coral polyps …… in the same place all the time.

a- stay b- don't stay c- move d- walk

4- Coral polyps have clear bodies and their exoskeletons are …… .

a- red b- white c- green d- bright

5- In a small part of a coral reef, there are millions of these tiny …… .

a- plants b- flowers c- insects d- organisms

6- Coral polyps can live in all the …… around the world.

a- rivers b- lakes c- oceans d- ponds

7- The reefs need …… to live and to grow.

a- wins b- sunlight c- dust d- storm

8- Coral reefs are …… for many animals.

a- houses b- caves c- tents d- homes

9- Coral reefs are important …… for many animals.

a- forests b- habitat c- deserts d- rivers

R

10- Tropical fish often have bright colors so they can …… safely in a reef.

a- hide **b-** hunt **c-** jump **d-** play

11- The Red Sea coral reef is the largest coral reef system in ……. .

a- Asia **b-** world **c-** Africa **d-** Australia

12- The Red Sea coral reef is the …… largest reef system in the world.

a- first **b-** second **c-** third **d-** fourth

13- The Red Sea coral reef is about …… kilometers long.

a- 4 **b-** 4,0 **c-** 4,00 **d-** 4,000

14- The Red Sea coral reef covers over …… square kilometers.

a- 2,0 **b-** 2,00 **c-** 2,000 **d-** 2,0000

3 Read and write T (True) or F (False): What is coral bleaching?

1- At the moment, the seas and oceans on Earth are getting colder. ()

2- When the water temperature rises,the algae inside the coral polyps leave. ()

3- Coral bleaching can also happen when there is pollution. ()

4- At the moment, the seas and oceans on Earth are getting warmer. ()

5- When a reef loses its color, the coral dies. ()

6- The water of the Red Sea is colder than other seas. ()

7- To protect coral reefs we also need to have more pollution in our oceans. ()

8- The water of the Red Sea is warmer than other seas. ()

9- To protect coral reefs we also need to have less pollution in our oceans. ()

10- Coral bleaching can also happen when there is too much sunlight. ()

11- Coral bleaching can also happen when there is not enough water. ()

12- The algae give the coral reef its bright colors. ()

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1- At the moment, the seas and oceans on Earth are getting …… .

a- colder b- cooler c- warmer d- frozen

2- When the water temperature rises, the algae inside the coral polyps …… .

a- leave b- come c- enter d- live

3- When the algae leave, the reef is pale and …… .

a- bright b- gray c- blue d- white

4- When a reef loses its color, the coral …… .

a- lives b- dies c- flourishes d- leaves

5- When the coral dies, the animals that live in the reef cannot …… there.

a- leave b- eat c- stay d- play

6- In 2020, scientists discovered that some coral reefs in the Red Sea can survive changes in …… .

a- weather b- temperature c- water d- beaches

7- The water of the Red Sea is …… than other seas.

a- warmer b- colder c- cooler d- dirtier

8- To protect coral reefs we also need to have less …… in our oceans.

a- ships b- wind c- divers d- pollution

9- We must also work together to …….. global warming.

a- reduce b- increase c- develop d- support

Paragraph writing:

-Did you know?

A paragraph is made up of several sentences (3-8 sentences). A paragraph contains a topic sentence, main (body) sentences and a conclusion sentence.

-تتكون الفقرة التعبيرية (paragraph) من جملة رئيسية تحتوي علي الفكرة الرئيسية للموضوع ثم جسم الموضوع الذي يحتوي علي جمل و أفكار لشرح الفكرة الرئيسية ثم جملة ختامية تعبر عن خلاصة الموضوع

-Leave a space in the beginning of your paragraph.

- اترك مسافة في بداية الموضوع.

-You must write your sentences without any grammatical mistakes, spelling mistakes or misuse of vocabulary.

- يجب عليك أن تكتب بدون أي أخطاء نحوية او لغوية او إملائية.

- You must also follow punctuation rules.

- يجب عليك أن تتبع قواعد الترقيم.

-Writing tip!

Use these words/phrases to link the sentences and ideas in your paragraph:

In addition بالإضافة إلي: to add more information to the same idea.

However مع ذالك: use this to show a change in a topic.

On one hand …. On the other hand من ناحية ... ومن ناحية أخري :

these can show two different points of view on the same topic.

-Writing tip!

When you use clear paragraphs, it's easier for people to understand your writing. Use several short paragraphs instead of one or two long ones.

عندما تستخدم فقرات واضحة ، يسهل على الناس فهم كتاباتك. استخدم عدة فقرات قصيرة بدلاً من فقرة أو فقرتين طويلتين.

(Two marks for relevance of ideas and vocabulary – One mark for spelling – One mark for punctuation – One mark for grammar)

Suggested Paragraphs

Football

My favorite hobby is playing football. I play football in the park. I can score goals. A team has eleven players. I play with my friends. Football is very exciting.

Our body

We have five senses. We see with our eyes. We taste with our tongue. We smell with our noses. We hear with our ears. We touch with our skin.

Reptiles

Reptiles are cold blooded. They don't have hair of fur. They have scales. Reptiles lay eggs. They have to spend time in the sun to keep warm. Most reptiles have four legs except snakes which don't have any. All reptiles lay eggs. Most reptiles live on land. some can live in rivers or the sea.

Music instruments

There are different types of music instruments. The violin is a string instrument. The oboe is a wind instrument that we blow. The Shababa and The Rebaba are instrument in Bedouin music. The oud is a string instrument like the violin.

A farmer

My grandpa is a farmer. The lives in a village. He grows food. He keeps animals to get meat and milk. He raises geese and lots of hens. The geese are beautiful. Life in the village is very nice.

Renewable energy

Renewable energy is good for us. The sun, the wind and water are renewable energy. It's clean. It's cheap. It doesn't pollute the environment.

Our body

Our body consists of many systems. We use our digestive system when we eat and drink. The food goes to the stomach and is changed into energy and nutrients. We use our respiratory system when we breathe. In the lungs oxygen is passed to the blood. The heart pumps the blood around our body. Our skeleton is made up of all the bones which make us strong and protect our organs.

My community

A community is a group of people who live and work together. It is a mix true of people, activities and ideas. My community include my family, my friends and my school. When you act in a good way, this is good citizenship. You should behave in a polite and fair way.

History of Egypt

Egypt is a country with a very long and interesting history. People started to live near the Nile. Thousands of years ago. There were two separate areas, lower Egypt and upper Egypt. One pharoa joined these two parts to unite the country of Egypt. Egypt controlled the Nile and became a powerful counrty.

Paralympic games

The paralympic games is a competition for athletes with disabilities. It takes place every four years in a different country each time. Egypt has many athletes opportunities for energy one to take part in these competitions.

A day at the farm

Last Friday I went to the farm. I went with my friends .We went by car. I saw a lot of animals. I fed the cows. I rode a donkey. We had sandwiches. We took photos. We enjoyed our time very much. We came back home in the evening.

A day at the zoo

Last week I went to the zoo. I went with my family. We went by car. I had some sandwiches. we watched a lot of animals. I fed the monkeys. We had a nice time. We were very happy.

A day on the beach

Last week I went to the beach. I went with my family. We went by car. We played on the beach. We swam in the sea. We had lunch. We had a nice time. We were very happy.

My birthday

My birthday was yesterday. I had a nice party. It was at my home. All my friends came. We danced and sang happily. We ate cakes and drank Cola. My father bought me a nice present. We had a nice time. We were very happy.

My school

This is my school. It has got a big building .There ‘s a library on the second floor .There are a lot of different books in the library. In the playground I play games with my friends. We spend a nice time together. We feel very happy.

My favourite sport

My favourite sport is basketball. I play it every day. I play it with my friends. I play it at school. I have got posters of basketball players. I like reading sports magazines. I want to be a basketball player when I grow up.

My favourite hobby (Reading)

My favourite hobby is reading. I like it very much. I read in the school library. I go there every week. I go with my friends. I read books. I like animals books. Reading is very interesting.

E-mail writing:

-Form:

To: ايميل المرسل اليه

From: ايميل الراسل

Subject: الموضوع

Hi, Dear, اسم المرسل اليه

Introduction (مقدمة):

I am very happy to write you this e-mail. I hope you are fine and everything is ok.

Body (الموضوع): I'd like to talk to you about ….

"الموضوع" تكتب جمل منظمة كما تكتبها في paragraph

Conclusion (خاتمة):

With my best wishes اسم الراسل



Example:

- Write an e-mail to your friend Ziad about a visit you made to the Pyramids last week.

Your name is Abdo and your email is Abdo@excellence.com

And Ziad's email is Ziad@excellence.com

Answer:

To: Ziad@excellence.com

From: Abdo@excellence.com

Subject: A visit to the pyramids

Hi Ziad,

I am very happy to write you this e-mail. I hope everything is Ok.

Now, I'd like to tell you about my visit to the pyramids.

Last week I went on a school trip to the pyramids. I went with my classmates and teachers. The history teacher told us about the Pharaohs who built the pyramids, and he gave us interesting information about them. I saw many tourists from all over the world who were amazed when they saw the pyramids. We rode horses and camels. We had a wonderful day. I hope we can visit the pyramids together one day.

With my best wishes,

yours, Abdo.

E

Revision Test – Test 11:

Listening: (8 marks)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 marks)

1- …….. is very important for the success of a project.
a- Friends **b- Teamwork** **c- Brothers** **d- Sisters**

2- Share your …….. and feelings with the other team members.
a- ideas **b- books** **c- bags** **d- food**

3- You should be …….. About how you're feeling about a project.
a- close **b- bad** **c- nervous** **d- open**

4- You might have a …….. idea.
a- bad **b- weak** **c- good** **d- short**

2) Listen and complete: (4 marks)

1- Renewable resources don't …….. out.
2- The sun, wind and water are …….. resources.
3- …….. and petroleum are non-renewable resources.
4- Once we have …….. non-renewable up. We can't get any.

Reading: (11 marks)

3) Read and complete the text with words from the box: (3 marks)

(plastic – picking – pollution – leaving)

Waleed : What are you doing, Laila?
Laila : I'm reading an article about **(1)** …… on Mount Everest.
Waleed : Oh! It's great.
Laila : Yeah! People are collecting **(2)**…… bags, food packets and bottles.
Waleed : What else?
Laila : Those people are **(3)**…….. old tents, boots and clothes that the climbers have left.
Waleed : They're amazing.
Laila : I agree! They are helping to keep the environment clean. They aren't leaving any litter on the mountain.

E

4) Read the following text and answer the questions below: (4 marks)

Our bodies need food like meat, rice, fruit, salt, and sugar to be healthy. Food gives us energy but we need a healthy diet to give us the right quantities of energy. When we do sport, our bodies use more energy and more food than when we watch TV to be healthy. The quantity of food that we eat should be the same as energy which our bodies use. Calories tell us how much energy there is in different food. If we eat food with too many calories in, then we will start to put on weight.

A) Choose the correct word:

1- We put on …… if we eat too many calories.

a- height **b- high** **c- length** **d- weight**

2- Our bodies use …….. energy when we do sport.

a- more **b- little** **c- less** **d- few**

B) Answer the following questions:

3- What do calories tell us?

…… .

4- What does food give us?

…… .

The reader: (4 marks)

5) A- Read and write T (true) or F (false):

1- Grandpa designs and measures the patterns. ()

2- Grandpa's father taught him how to sew. ()

B- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3- Grandpa is good at ……

a- Arabic **b-** English **c-** Science **d-** Math

4- …… is great at Math and working out problems.

a- Lobna **b-** Doha **c-** Engy **d-** Rasha

E

Writing: (11 marks)

6) Choose the correct answer form a, b, c or d: (4 marks)

1- Mom always talks to me ……
a- loud **b- quiet** **c- quietly** **d- slow**

2- My brother is …….. my sister.
a- smaller **b- smaller than** **c- the smallest** **d- small**

3- Miss Eman teaches …….. We all love her.
a- well **b- good** **c- badly** **d- quick**

4- Cairo is …… city in Egypt.
a- the biggest **b- bigger than** **c- biggest** **d- bigger**

7) Order the words to make correct sentences: (2 marks)

1- **It's** – games – fun – video – play – to.
…… .

2- rich – vitamins – are – **Fruits** – in.
…… .

8) Write a text of fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements: (5 marks)

"A visit to a clothes factory"

Guiding words: last week – school trip – clothes factory – scissors – cloth

……
……
……
……
……
……
……
……

Exams listening texts:

Exam 1 on unit 1:

1- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

We use our digestive system when we eat and drink. We chew and swallow food, then it goes to our stomach. In the stomach, a special liquid changes the food into energy and nutrients that we need in our bodies.
We use our respiratory system when we breathe. We breathe in air through our nose and it goes to our lungs. In the lungs, the oxygen in the air is passed to the blood. Our heart pumps this blood around our body.

2- Listen and complete:

We breathe in air through our nose, and it goes to our lungs. In the lungs, the oxygen in the air is passed to the blood. Our heart pumps this blood around our body. Our skeleton is made up of all the bones in body. These make us strong and protect organs. Muscles are attached to our bones, they lift and turn bones to make us move.

Exam 2 on unit 1:

1- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

We use our respiratory system when we breathe. We breathe in air through our nose, and it goes to our lungs. In the lungs, the oxygen in the air is passed to the blood. Our heart pumps this blood around the body. Our skeleton is made up of all the bones in body. These make us strong and protect organs. Muscles are attached to our bones, they lift and turn bones to make us move.

2- Listen and complete:

The Paralympic Games is an international competition for athletes with disabilities. Parasports is an important area in sports, and Egypt has many athletes who take part in these competitions. Aya Ayman Abbas is a swimming champion who has won the Egypt Cup three times. She was the first female Egyptian Paralympic swimmer in Rio in 2016. She has won lots of gold, silver, and bronze medals in may different countries.

Exam 1 on unit 2:

1- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Birds are warm-blooded, but they don't have fur or hair. Birds have feathers, and they all have wings. Birds lay eggs which are hard. Most birds can fly, but some can't. They have beaks, which are made of bone. Their beaks are different shapes because they eat different food: some birds eat meat, some eat nuts, and some eats seeds.

2- Listen and complete:

Amphibians can live on land and on water, but they need water or a habitat to survive. Like reptiles, they are cold-blooded and they lay eggs. However, amphibians like frogs and toads, always lay their eggs. They have smooth skin, not scales. They can take in oxygen through skin and their lungs.

Exam 2 on unit 2:

1- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Fish live in water and take in oxygen through their gills: they can't breathe air. They are cold-blooded and they lay eggs. They also have scales they use fins to move. There are thousands of different types of fish in all water habitats – saltwater, fresh water, and wetlands.

2- Listen and complete:

Scientists thin that there are nearly 400,000 different types of plants. Most of these have flowers, which come in many different colors. The bright flowers attract insects, which carry pollen from one flower to another flower. This helps the flowers to reproduce.

Exam 1 on unit 3:

1- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Egypt is a country with a very long and interesting history. People started to live near the Nile about 9,000 years ago, in 7000 BCE. At first, there were two separate areas. Lower Egypt was in the north, where the Nile joins the sea. Upper Egypt was in the south, where the Nile flows thorough the deserts of Africa. In about 3200 BCE, one pharaoh, Mena joined these two parts to unite the country of Egypt.

2- Listen and complete:

A community is a group of people who live and work together in the same area. A community is more than your house, family or your neighborhood. It is a mixture of people, places, activities, and ideas. My community includes my family, my friends, and my school.

Exam 2 on unit 3:

1- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Egypt has lots of traditional folk music. There are different styles from different parts of the country. Folk musicians from Upper Egypt play Saidi music. This type of music uses string instruments such as violins, and wind instruments such as the oboe. Singing and drumming is also a key part.

2- Listen and complete:

Raqs Assaya is probably the most famous dance from the Saidi musical tradition. The dancers us sticks (Assaya) and step quickly in special patterns. The Tahtib is also from the tradition of Saidi music. The dancers carefully perform a dance with sticks in a way that looks like fighting. Dancers wear special costumes. These can be dark and plain, or bright-colored and patterned.

Exam 1 on unit 4:

1- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My name's Ahmed and I live in a small village on the Nile. My dad's a farmer. He grows tomatoes, potatoes, dates, and onions. We have some animals too. There are ten sheep and three cows. There are some donkeys in our village, but my family doesn't have one now. You can see cats in the street and if you're lucky, you might see some beautiful Egyptian geese and ducks on the river.

2- Listen and complete:

Amr lives in Giza. It's a metropolitan area and densely populated. There are more than four million inhabitants, so it's a very busy place. There are a lot of cars so there's also traffic jam. If you are a pedestrian, you have to be very careful. There are many famous things in Giza such as The Pyramids, Sphinx, Cairo University. Giza has modern and ancient places.

Exam 2 on unit 4:

1- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My name's Waleed and I live in a small village on the Nile. My dad's farmer. He grows tomatoes, potatoes, dates, and onions. There are six sheep and two buffaloes. There are some donkeys in my village, but my family doesn't have one now. You can see cats in the street and if you're lucky, you might see some beautiful Egyptian geese on the river.

2- Listen and complete:

Hello, my name's Fareeda and I want to tell you about where I live. I live in Greater Cairo. It's a metropolitan area and densely populated. There are more than 20 million inhabitants, so it's very busy place. There are a lot of cars so there's a congestion. If you are a pedestrian, you have to be very careful.

Exam 1 on unit 5:

1- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Fossil fuels are non-renewable resources. Oil, coal, and natural gas are fossil fuels. Crude oil is taken out of the ground and made into petroleum, which we use in our cars, buses, and airplanes. Coal is take from deep inside the Earth and it is used to generate electricity. Coal and natural gas are used in our homes for heating and cooking.

2- Listen and complete:

The water you drink at lunch is a natural resource. Where do the potatoes we eat come from? They're grown in the ground, and this ground is made up of what we call soil. So yes, soil too, is a natural resource. Some natural resources are renewable. They never run out.

Exam 1 on unit 6:

1- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

The first train line in Egypt opened in 1854. It traveled from Cairo to Alexandria. The Suze Canal is now 193 kilometers long, 205 meters wide, and 24 meters deep. It was started in 1859 and it took ten years to finish it.

2- Listen and complete:

Heba looked out of the window of her family's house at the ships going along the Suez Canal. They were so big. 'It must be so fun to be a ship's captains!' though Heba.

Revision Exams:

Exam 11:

1- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Teamwork is very important for the success of a project. Here are to remember when you're working in a team.
Communicate – share your ideas and feelings with the other team members. You should be open about how you're feeling about a project. Remember to be sensitive to how others might feel. You be polite too.
Actively work together with your team members the best results. You might have a good idea, but make sure to others' ideas too.

2- Listen and complete:

Some resources are what we call renewable. Renewable resources can be naturally replaced when they run out. The sun, wind, and falling water are examples of renewable resources. Then there are non-renewable resources. These are things like metals and petroleum. Once we have used all of them up, we can't get any more here on Earth.

Exam 12:

1- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

There are lots of interesting things to see under the sea! Some fish are very brightly-colored and so are some plants. In a coral reef, having bright colors can help fish to hide from the bigger fish. In addition, many predators don't eat prey that are brightly colored. Bright colors can be a warning that the animal is poisonous.

2- Listen and complete:

I'm Mazen. I like my city because we have a lot of services. We have schools, hospitals, and lots of shops where you can buy anything you need. We can also use the bus to go wherever we want. One of my favorite places is Montaza Palace. There are beautiful gardens that I sometimes visit with my family. I love my city very much and I hope you visit Alexandria one day.

Answers:

Unit 1:

Exercise on vocabulary:

1) Choose the correct answer:

1- stomach	2- lung	3- bones
4- body	5- muscles	6- eyes
7- tongues	8- sight	9- hear
10- deaf	11- read	12- disabled
13- takes	14- champion	15- national
16- fun	17- Doing	18- snack
19- unhealthy	20- activities	

Exercises on grammar:

1) Choose the correct answer:

1- has 2- looks 3- go 4- is
5- am 6- We 7- have 8- has
9- are 10- does 11- pumps 12- help
13- play 14- studies 15- is 16- like
17- doesn't 18- go 19- always helps 20- work

2) Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets:

1- Ziad always helps his teeth.
2- He doesn't study hard.
3- I don't have two brothers.
4- Do you like English?
5- He watches TV in the evening.
6- We don't eat in the restaurant every day.
7- She doesn't waste her time.
8- He studies English every day.
9- We are students.
10- They have a good house.

4) Re-arrange the following sentences:

1- We use our bones and muscles to move.
2- We use our respiratory system when we breathe.
3- The heart pumps blood all over our body.
4- Our bones protect our organs.
5- We smell with our noses.
6- We have to tidy the lounge.
7- You should do sports every day.
8- We should avoid unhealthy habits.
9- It's fun to play video games.
10- Fruits are rich with vitamins.

Exam 1 on unit 1:

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- a 2- c 3- b 4- c

2) Listen and complete:

1- nose 2- blood 3- pumps 4- skeleton

3) Read and complete the dialogue with words from the box:

1- favorite 2- Valley 3- theatre

4) Read the following text and answer the questions below:

A) Choose the correct answer:

1- clever 2- cakes

B) Answer the following questions:

3- Every week / once a week.
4- A picture of his dad.

The reader:

5) A- Read and write T (true) or F (false):

1- F (False) 2- T (True)

B- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3- b 4- a

6) Choose the correct answer form a, b, c or d:

1- c 2- a 3- b 4- d

7) Order the words to make correct sentences:

1- We use muscles and bones to move.
2- We use our respiratory system when we breathe.

Exam 2 on unit 1:

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- b 2- d 3- c 4- a

2) Listen and complete:

1- games 2- are 3- champion 4- three

3) Read and complete the dialogue with words from the box:

1- account 2- parents 3- cyberfriends

4) Read the following text and answer the questions below:

A) Choose the correct answer:

1- blood 2- skeleton

B) Answer the following questions:

1- Our respiratory system.
2- Lungs.

The reader:

5) A- Read and write T (true) or F (false):

1- F (False) 2- T (True)

B- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3- d 4- c

6) Choose the correct answer form a, b, c or d:

1- d 2- b 3- a 4- c

7) Order the words to make correct sentences:

1- We use our respiratory system when we breathe.
2- Our bones protect our organs.

Unit 2:

Exercise on vocabulary:

1) Choose the correct answer:

1- fins 2- gills 3- feathers 4- amphibians
5- fresh water 6- beaks 7- warm 8- fur
9- in water 10- Bats 11- water 12- bones
13- milk 14- enormous 15- chameleon
16- blue 17- stronger 18- ostrich
19- invertebrate 20- octopus

Exercises on grammar:

1) Underline the correct word:

1- best 2- taller 3- bigger 4- most expensive
5- newer 6- oldest 7- biggest 8- faster
9- stronger 10- smaller than 11- as heavy as
12- more interesting
13- the most crowded 14- as tall 15- better
16- faster
17- slowly 18- politely 19- fast 20- loudly

2) Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets:

1- Ali is eating hungrily.
2- His car is newer than mine.
3- Ali is as old as Amr.
4- Rasha is as tall as Mona.
5- Omar is the oldest boy in the family.
6- Ola is less active than Hana.
7- English the best subject for me.

8- He spoke sadly.
9- Mohamed Salah is a quick runner.
10- The elephant is the biggest animal.
11- He drives carefully.

3) Re-arrange the following sentences:

1- Vertebrates are animals with a backbone.
2- Reptiles are cold-blooded.
3- Reptiles don't have fur or hair.
4- Birds eat with their beaks.
5- Fish take oxygen through their gills.
6- Some birds don't lay eggs.
7- Some birds eat meat.
8- Mammals feed their babies with milk.
9- The whale shark is the biggest fish.
10- An ostrich is faster than a leopard.

Exam 3 on unit 2:

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- a 2- c 3- d 4- b

2) Listen and complete:

1- eggs 2- toads 3- scales 4- lungs

3) Read and complete the dialogue with words from the box:

1- urban 2- green spaces 3- bike paths

4) Read the following text and answer the questions below:

A) Choose the correct answer:

1- Birds 2- hair

B) Answer the following questions:

1- With milk.
2- They eat different food such as meat, nuts, and seeds.

The reader:

5) A- Read and write T (true) or F (false):

1- F (False) 2- T (True)

B- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3- c 4- b

6) Choose the correct answer form a, b, c or d:

1- a 2- c 3- a 4- d

7) Order the words to make correct sentences:

1- Some workers are driving trucks.
2- Where do you live?

Exam 4 on unit 2:

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- b 2- d 3- b 4- c

2) Listen and complete:

1- plants 2- flowers 3- insects 4- reproduce

3) Read and complete the dialogue with words from the box:

1- travelled 2- went 3- comfortable

4) Read the following text and answer the questions below:

A) Choose the correct answer:

1- six 2- slow

B) Answer the following questions:

1- Arachnids.
2- A hard shell.

The reader:

5) A- Read and write T (true) or F (false):

1- F (False) 2- T (True)

B- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

3- c 4- d

6) Choose the correct answer form a, b, c or d:

1- b 2- d 3- c 4- b

7) Order the words to make correct sentences:

1- She presented her project to the class.
2- What are natural resources?

Unit 3:

Exercise on vocabulary:

1) Choose the correct answer:

1- community 2- neighborhood 3- citizen 4- tourists
5- history 6- BCE 7- powerful 8- unite
9- kingdom 10- dynasties 11- scribes 12- rules
13- tombs 14- symbols 15- museum 16- governorates
17- map 18- countryside 19- upper Egypt 20- capital
21- instrument 22- folk 23- lively 24- sticks
25- Geography

Exercises on grammar:

1) Underline the correct word:

1- My 2- her 3- his 4- his
5- their 6- our 7- its 8- her
9- hers 10- his 11- ours 12- cleaned
13- ruled 14- joined 15- described 16- worked
17- wrote 18- used 19- finished 20- built

2) Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets:

1- I didn't play music at school.
2- I visited the museum last week.
3- My father paid for the things I bought yesterday.
4- How did she travel to London?
5- What did your mother make for your birthday?
6- I gave a present for my friend.
7- My grandfather used to walk for half an hour.
8- We spent the last summer holiday in Sharm El sheikh.
9- People used to make papyrus from papyrus reeds.
10- Did you attend the party last night?

3) Re-arrange the following sentences:

1- Dynasties controlled Egypt for many years.
2- The Ancient Egyptians built the pyramids.
3- Scribes were very important people.
4- Ancient Egyptians made paper from papyrus reeds.
5- There are twenty-seven governorates in Egypt.
6- Upper Egypt is in the south.
7- There are high mountains next to the river.
8- In the past, the River Nile flooded.
9- I like playing music.
10- The rababa is a traditional musical instrument.

Exam 5 on unit 3:

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
1- b **2-** d **3-** a **4-** a

2) Listen and complete:
1- community **2-** Mixture **3-** is **4-** family

3) Read and complete the dialogue with words from the box:
1- Where **2-** governorate **3-** arms

4) Read the following text and answer the questions below:

A) Choose the correct answer:
1- maths **2-** hospital

B) Answer the following questions:
3- 3 sisters and 3 brothers.
4- A teacher.

The reader:

5) A- Read and write T (true) or F (false):
1- T (True) **2-** T (True)

B- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
3- d **4-** b

6) Choose the correct answer form a, b, c or d:
1- c **2-** d **3-** d **4-** a

7) Order the words to make correct sentences:
1- These shoes belong to Mazen.
2- How do you make green darker?

Exam 6 on unit 3:

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
1- c **2-** a **3-** d **4-** b

2) Listen and complete:
1- musical **2-** tradition **3-** costumes **4-** plain

3) Read and complete the dialogue with words from the box:
1- games **2-** information **3-** desert

4) Read the following text and answer the questions below:

A) Choose the correct word:
1- united **2-** deserts

B) Answer the following questions:
3- Egypt is a country with a very long and interesting history.
4- In about 3200 BCE.

The reader:

5) A- Read and write T (true) or F (false):
1- F (False) **2-** T (True)

B- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
3- a **4-** a

6) Choose the correct answer form a, b, c or d:
1- c **2-** b **3-** c **4-** d

7) Order the words to make correct sentences:
1- I do my homework so that I understand.
2- Do you have any brothers?

Unit 4:

Exercise on vocabulary:

1) Underline the correct word:
1- city **2-** villages **3-** busy **4-** densely
5- isolated **6-** traditional **7-** workshop
8- villages **9-** grown up **10-** sheep **11-** Geese
12- gooselings **13-** resources **14-** fish
15- artisan **16-** difference **17-** population
18- loom **19-** weaving **20-** geometric **21-** dyed
22- yarn

Exercises on grammar:

1) Choose the correct answer:
1- children **2-** loaves **3-** women **4-** goslings
5- before **6-** although **7-** so **8-** As soon as
9- so that **10-** after **11-** As soon as **12-** before
13- so that **14-** while **15-** but **16-** halves
17- 68 **18-** 60 **19-** 231 **20-** quarter

2) Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets:
1- Men work hard for their families.
2- As soon as the food is ready, we can eat.
3- I bought three loaves of bread.
4- They fix their cards by themselves.
5- I study hard so that I succeed.
6- He has many lessons every day.
7- After the artisans make the wrap, they can weave the carpets.
8- My sister wanted to have fun, so she went out.
9- He goes to school every day.
10- Bakers make bread.

3) Re-arrange the following sentences:
1- I like living in the countryside.
2- Cities are very crowded.
3- Archeologists look for things from the past.
4- Villages are sparsely populated.
5- Can geese and gooselings swim?
6- Egyptian artisans make very good carpets.
7- I like bright colors.
8- If we divide 525 by 35 we get 15.
9- If we multiply 36 by 8 we get 288.
10- Farmers keep animals and grow crops.

Exam 7 on unit 4:

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
1- b **2-** d **3-** a **4-** c

2) Listen and complete:
1- area **2-** density **3-** traffic **4-** Pyramids

3) Read and complete the dialogue with words from the box:
1- account **2-** posts **3-** private

4) Read the following text and answer the questions below:

A) Choose the correct answer:
1- geometric **2-** dye

B) Answer the following questions:
1- The warp is the structure of the carpet.
2- Spun Egyptian cotton.

The reader:

5) A- Read and write T (true) or F (false):
1- T (True) **2-** T (True)

B- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
3- c **4-** b

6) Choose the correct answer form a, b, c or d:
1- a 2- a 3- b 4- d
7) Order the words to make correct sentences:
1- Bats are the only mammals that fly.
2- Which vertebrates lay eggs?

Exam 8 on unit 4:

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
1- d 2- b 3- c 4- a
2) Listen and complete:
1- greater 2- densely 3- 20 4- pedestrian
3) Read and complete the dialogue with words from the box:
1- made 2- dropped 3- mess
4) Read the following text and answer the questions below:
A) Choose the correct answer:
1- healthy 2- good
B) Answer the following questions:
3- You must practice them constantly.
4- To work for the good of his country.
The reader:
5) A- Read and write T (true) or F (false):
1- T (True) 2- T (True)
B- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
3- a 4- d
6) Choose the correct answer form a, b, c or d:
1- b 2- a 3- a 4- b
7) Order the words to make correct sentences:
1- There are two buffaloes and six sheep.
2- Do you have any brothers or sisters?

Unit 5:

Exercise on vocabulary:

1) Choose the correct answer:
1- natural 2- environment 3- wood 4- plastic
5- renewable 6- fuels 7- gold 8- fossils
9- electricity 10- panel 11- global warming
12- non-renewable 13- petrol 14- farm
15- solar 16- destroy 17- promotion 18- talent
19- supportive
20- success

Exercises on grammar:

1) Choose the correct answer:
1- flies 2- helps 3- are 4- watches
5- cries 6- washes 7- raises 8- drinks
9- her 10- his 11- their 12- washes
13- helps 14- telephones 15- wakes 16- brushes
17- has 18- does 19- do 20- Do
2) Rewrite the following sentences:
1- How does your father go to work?
2- Ali doesn't work in a factory.
3- My sister studies Mathematics at her school.
4- Dolphins are kind sea animals.
5- He always helps his father.
6- Where do doctors work?
7- Why are doctors important?
8- What does school teach us.
9- We don't live in China.
10- Nurses help doctors.
3) Re-arrange the following sentences:
1- The sun is a great source of energy.
2- Wood comes from forests.
3- Plastic is made from petroleum.
4- Fish live in water.
5- We use water to grow plants.
6- Coal is a fossil fuel.
7- Global warming is very dangerous.
8- She brushes her teeth every day.
9- The baby cries when she is hungry.
10- We drink a lot of water when it is hot.

Exam 9 on unit 5:

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
1- b 2- a 3- d 4- c
2) Listen and complete:
1- renewable 2- soil 3- ground 4- run
3) Read and complete the dialogue with words from the box:
1- account 2- website 3- information
4) Read the following text and answer the questions below:
A) Choose the correct answer:
1- construct 2- wood
B) Answer the following questions:
3- We get from nature.
4- From petroleum.
The reader:
5) A- Read and write T (true) or F (false):
1- T (True) 2- T (True)
B- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
3- b 4- b
6) Choose the correct answer form a, b, c or d:
1- a 2- c 3- b 4- b
7) Order the words to make correct sentences:
1- The sun is a great source of energy.
2- Wood comes from forests.

Unit 6:

Exercise on vocabulary:

1) Choose the correct answer:
1- on foot 2- ship 3- Camels 4- plane
5- ferry 6- rocket 7- solar 8- robot
9- specific 10- first 11- safe 12- along
13- container 14- password 15- strong

Exercises on grammar:

1) Choose the correct answer:
1- will listen 2- come 3- won't 4- tomorrow
5- make 6- will go 7- won't go 8- use
9- won't 10- travel
2) Rewrite the following sentences:
1- He will clean his car tomorrow.
2- We will visit the museum next week.
3- I will do my homework in the evening tomorrow.
4- She will cook our dinner next time.

5- The teacher will explain the future simple tomorrow.

3) Re-arrange the following sentences:

1- We cross the river by ferry.
2- People travelled by ship in the past.
3- The plane is faster than the train.
4- Have you ever traveled on a train?
5- Robots will drive trains in the future.
6- He won't set by the window.
7- Will they take a train to Aswan?
8- She will travel on a ship.
9- You should make a strong password.
10- Don't give your personal data to anyone.

Exam 10 on unit 6:

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
1- c **2-** d **3-** a **4-** c

2) Listen and complete:
1- window **2-** Suez **3-** big **4-** captain

3) Read and complete the dialogue with words from the box:
1- club **2-** vollyball **3-** When

4) Read the following text and answer the questions below:

A) Choose the correct answer:
1- December **2-** two

B) Answer the following questions:
3- English / British.
4- Five.

The reader:

5) A- Read and write T (true) or F (false):
1- F (False) **2-** T (True)

B- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
3- b **4-** b

6) Choose the correct answer form a, b, c or d:
1- b **2-** a **3-** c **4-** d

7) Order the words to make correct sentences:
1- We cross the river by the ferry.
2- People travelled by ship in the past
.

Revision Test model answer:

Exam 11:

1) Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
1- b **2-** a **3-** d **4-** c

2) Listen and complete:
1- run **2-** renewable **3-** metals **4-** used

3) Read and complete the dialogue with words from the box:
1- pollution **2-** plastic **3-** picking up

4) Read the following text and answer the questions below:

A) Choose the correct answer:
1- weight **2-** more

B) Answer the following questions:
3- Calories tell us how much energy there is in different food.
4- Food gives us energy.

The reader:

5) A- Read and write T (true) or F (false):
1- T (True) **2-** F (False)

B- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
3- b **4-** d

6) Choose the correct answer form a, b, c or d:
1- c **2-** b **3-** a **4-** a

7) Order the words to make correct sentences:
1- It's fun to play video games.
2- Fruits are rich in vitamins.

1) The Reader: (Khayameya Summer):
1- Read and write True of False:
1- T 2-F 3-T 4-F 5-T 6-T 7-T 8-T 9-F 10-F 11-T 12-F 13-T 14-T
2- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, d:
1- b 2-b 3-d 4-a 5-c 6-b 7-b 8-d 9-b 10a
3- Read and write True of False:
1-F 2-T 3-T 4-F 5-T 6-F 7-T 8-T 9-T 10-F 11-T 12-T 13-T 14-F
4- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, d:
1-a 2-c 3-b 4-c 5-d 6-b 7-a
5- Read and write True of False:
1-T 2-T 3-T 4-T 5-T 6-T 7-F 8-F 9-F 10-T 11-T
6-Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, d:
1-c 2-b 3-d 4-a 5-d 6-b 7-c 8-d 9-b 10-a
7- Read and write True of False:
1-T 2-F 3-F 4-T 5-T 6-T
8- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, d:
1-c 2-b 3-a 4-c
9- Read and write True of False:
1-T 2-T 3-F 4-F 5-T 6-T 7-T
10-Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, d:
1-d 2-d 3-b 4-d
2) The Reader: (Coral Reefs):
1- Read and write True of False:
1-F 2-T 3-F 4-T 5-T 6-F 7-T 8-T 9-T 10-T 11-F 12-F 13-F 14-T 15-T 16-T 17-T 18-T 19-T 20-F 21-T 22-F 23-T 24-T 25-T
2- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, d:
1-c 2-a 3-a 4-b 5-d 6-c 7-b 8-d 9-b 10-a 11-b 12-c 13-d 14-c
3- Read and write True of False:
1-F 2-T 3-T 4-T 5-T 6-F 7-F 8-T 9-T 10-T 11-T 12-T
4-Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, d:
1-c 2-a 3-d 4-b 5-c 6-b 7-a 8-d 9-a
2) The Reader: (Coral Reefs):
1- Read and write True of False:
1-F 2-T 3-F 4-T 5-T 6-F 7-T 8-T 9-T 10-T 11-F 12-F 13-F 14-T 15-T 16-T 17-T 18-T 19-T 20-F 21-T 22-F 23-T 24- T 25- T
2- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, d:
1-c 2-d 3-a 4-b 5-d 6-c 7-b 8-d 9-b 10-a 11-c 12-c 13-d 14-c
3- Read and write True of False:
1-F 2-T 3-T 4-T 5-T 6-F 7-F 8-T 9-T 10-T 11-T 12-T 13-T
4- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, d:
1-c 2-a 3-d 4-b 5-c 6-b 7-a 8-d 9-a

هدية كتاب Step Ahead لطلاب الصف الرابع بالإجابات النموذجية

المراجعة النهائية استعدادًا لامتحان نصف العام طبقًا لمواصفات أسئلة الامتحان الجديدة

Revision on Unit 1

1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

respiratory – nutrients – digestive – stomach

We use our 1 system when we eat and drink. We chew and swallow food, then it goes to our 2 In the stomach, a special liquid changes the food into energy and 3 that we need in our bodies.

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

tongue – skin – smell – senses

We use our 1 every day to help us understand the world around us. We use our eyes to see and our ears to hear. We 2 with our nose, taste with our 3, and we can feel with our skin.

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

cerebellum – stem – cerebrum – brain

Our 1 controls how we move, what we remember, and the choices we make. The three main areas of the brain are the 2, the cerebellum and the brain 3, and they all have important jobs.

4 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

international - disabilities - Paralympic - athletes

The 1 Games is an international competition for athletes with 2 Like the Olympics, it takes place every four years, and is held in a different country each time. Parasports is an important area in sports, and Egypt has many 3 who take part in these competitions.

5 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

brain – Mental – Physical – healthy

To lead a 1 life, we need a mixture of physical and mental activities. 2 activity is good for your body. It makes our muscles strong and helps us use up the calories we get from food. 3 activities are good for our brain. When you draw, paint, write, or play an instrument, you really focus on the creative activity, so you relax.

6 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

national – international – runner – races

Interviewer : Can I ask you some questions?
Mostafa : Of course, with pleasure.
Interviewer : You are a very good 1
Mostafa : Thank you.
Interviewer : What 2 do you take part in?
Mostafa : I take part in 100-meter, 200-meter and 400-meter races.
Interviewer : When did you join the 3 team in Egypt?
Mostafa : I joined the national team in Egypt in 2006.
Interviewer : Have you won any medals?
Mostafa : Yes, I have won many medals including gold.

7 Choose the correct answer:

1. She (am - is - are - aren't) hungry. She wants something to eat.
2. I (has - hasn't - have - am having) two sisters. I love them.
3. Hana (is doing - do - did - does) her art class every Tuesday after school.
4. We (plays - is playing - are playing - play) tennis after school on Wednesdays.
5. Our brain (control - controlling - controls - is control) our bodies.
6. The brain stem (is join - join - joining - joins) the two parts of the brain.
7. They (tidy - tidies - tidying - tidied) their beds when they get up every morning.
8. Kareema (look - are looking - looking - looks) disappointed. She is so sad.
9. Adam (go - goes - gone - is going) to the park every week.
10. I (am - is - isn't - are) happy. This weekend is fantastic.
11. Ali (like - don't like - is like - likes) drawing.
12. Noura (play - is playing - played - plays) volleyball every weekend.
13. Bones (make - is made - makes - is making) us strong and protect our organs.
14. We (sees - is seen - see - seen) with our eyes.
15. She (play - plays - are playing - playing) for the Egyptian team.

8 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. and - chew - We - food - swallow.

▶

2. pumps - Our heart - around - body - blood - our.

▶

3 breathe in - our - We - nose - through - air.

▶

4 use - our - We - day - senses - every.

▶

5 use - eyes - our - We - see - to.

▶

6 our - use - We - hear - ears - to.

▶

7 are - doing - we - What - Mom - today,?

▶ ?

8 the park - goes - every - to - Adam - week.

▶

9 to - tidy - have - We - lounge - the.

▶

10 takes - It - place - years - every - four.

▶

11 Aya Ayman Abbas - swimming - is - a - champion.

▶

12 won - medals - of - lots - She - gold.

▶

13 activities - are - Mental - our brain - good - for.

▶

14 wants - to - creative - do - Kareema - something.

▶

15 is - activity - Physical - good for - body - your.

▶

Revision Test on Unit 1

30

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

The Paralympic Games is an international competition for athletes with disabilities. Like the Olympics, it takes place every four years, and is held in a different country each time. Parasports is an important area in sports, and Egypt has many athletes who take part in these competitions.

1. The Paralympic Games takes place every (two - four - six - eight) years.
2. The Paralympic Games is an international competition for (doctors - teachers - singers - athletes) with disabilities.
3. Parasports is an important area in (singing - music - drawing - sports).
4. (France - China - Egypt - Japan) has many athletes who take part in these competitions.

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box: (3Ms)

doctor - dislike - science - like

Hazem : Hi, Ayman.

Ayman : Hello, Hazem.

Hazem : What are you doing now?

Ayman : I'm studying ❶ now.

Hazem : Do you ❷ science?

Ayman : Yes, I'm good at it.

Hazem : What would you like to be when you grow up?

Ayman : I'd like to be a ❸

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below: (5Ms)

English is an interesting language.It's spoken by a lot of people in different countries. Still, more people are learning it all over the world. Learning English is not so difficult. But, if you don't use it, you will forget it. English language gives you the real chance to read and know how other people think and live. This will make you know a lot about the wide world. If you ever think of going to foreign countries, you will find English more and more useful. Good English also gives you better chances for work.

A Choose the correct answer:

1 The English language is (hard - difficult - boring - interesting).
2 The underlined word "it" refers to (the world - people - English - French).
3 English is useful if you go (home - abroad - school - hospital).

B Answer these questions:

4 Where is English spoken?

▶

5 How is English important for your future?

▶

The Reader (Coral Reefs) (4Ms)

4 A. Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1 Coral reefs are made of plants. ()
2 Coral polyps move from one place to another. ()

B Choose the correct answer:

3 Coral reefs are made of thousands of tiny (plants - vertebrates - invertebrates - reptiles).

4 Coral polyps can live in all the (rivers - lakes - oceans - ponds) around the world.

5 Choose the correct answer: (5Ms)

1 Salma (play - playing - plays - played) tennis after school every Sunday.
2 Our heart (pumping - pumps - are pumping - pump) blood around our body.
3 Karim and Mona (look - looks - looked - are looking) disappointed. They are so sad.
4 Aser (go - goes - is going - went) to the library every week.
5 I (always am - am always - is always - always is) early. I always come on time.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

1 activities - are - Mental - our brain - good - for.

▶

2 are - doing - you - What - Ali - today,?

▶

3 develop - habits - unhealthy - You - shouldn't.

▶

7 Write a text of (40) words using the following guiding elements: (6Ms)

"Your favorite sport"

Ideas to help you:
- What is it?
- When do you play it?
- Where do you play it?
- Have you won any medals?
- What competition do you take part in?

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....



Revision on Unit 2

1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

Bats – mammals – hair – beaks

Mammals have 1 or fur on their bodies. They are warm-blooded. They feed their babies with milk and most of them give birth to their babies. They don't lay eggs. Humans are 2 Most mammals live on land, but some live in the sea, such as whales and seals. 3 are the only mammals that can fly.

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

blue whale – elephant – enormous – mammal

In the natural world, there are some 1 animals, and some tiny ones! The biggest animal on land is a mammal: the African 2 The biggest animal in the world is also a mammal, but it lives in the sea. It's the 3

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

hard – Invertebrates – soft – protection

1 are cold-blooded. They live on land and in water. Some invertebrates, such as crabs, have a hard shell for 2 Others, like jellyfish, have 3 bodies. Some invertebrates can swim very well, such as the octopus and the squid.

4 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

attract – reproduce – colors – flowers

Scientists think that there are nearly 400,000 different types of plants. Most of these have flowers, which come in many different ① The bright flowers ② insects, which carry pollen from one flower to another flower. This helps the flowers to ③

5 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

leaf – water – stem – soil

Most plants grow in ① However, some plants grow in water, such as the water lily. They have a large, flat ② on the surface of the water, and a long ③ that reaches down to the bottom of the lake.

6 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

live – biggest – smallest – run

Farida : Hello, Sara.
Sarah : Hi, Farida.
Farida : Do you know what the ① bird in the world is?
Sarah : Yes. The smallest bird is the bee hummingbird, which is about 5.5 centimetres long.
Farida : Where does it ②?
Sarah : It lives in Cuba.
Farida : What's the ③ bird in the world?
Sarah : The biggest bird is the ostrich. It can be 2.5 meters tall!

7 Choose the correct answer:

1. The whale shark is (smaller than - small - smaller - the smallest) than the blue whale.
2. The African elephant is (bigger - big - bigger than - biggest) the Asian elephant.
3. The whale shark is (bigger - biggest - bigger than - the biggest) fish in the world.
4. The bee hummingbird is (small - the smallest - smaller - smaller than) bird in the world.
5. My dad is (old - older - oldest - the oldest) than my mom.
6. My grandpa is (taller - tallest - taller than - the tallest) one in the family.
7. Amany is (short - shorter - the shortest - shortest) than her brother.
8. The (fast - faster - the fastest - fastest) animal in the world is the cheetah.
9. Russia is (big - the biggest - bigger - biggest) than Egypt.
10. The tortoise moves (quick - slow - slowly - easy).
11. The country is (largest - large - larger than - the largest) the city.
12. The team walked into the court (quiet - slow - quietly - quick).
13. They cheered (loudly - loud - clever - quiet) while watching the match.
14. Hany is a (careful - carefully - quickly - sadly) boy.
15. He ran (quiet - fast - quick - slow) and won the race.
16. She answered the questions (good - easy - well - badly) and got the full mark.
17. He is a (good - well - happily - badly) pupil.
18. She walks (slow - slowly - easy - quick).

8 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. feed - babies - their - Mammals - milk - with.

▶

2. fins - use - Fish - move - to.

▶

3 mammals - land - live - Most - on.

▶

4 biggest - is - The - bird - ostrich - the.

▶

5 a - big - is - How - whale - shark?

▶ ?

6 faster - are - Ostriches - leopards - than.

▶

7 I - quickly - look - the - on - Can - internet?

▶ ?

8 for - protection - a - have - shell - Crabs - hard.

▶

9 spider - move - can - The - very - quickly.

▶

10 colors - Primary - are - and blue - red, - yellow.

▶

11 red and - can mix - We - orange - yellow - to make.

▶

12 do - you - darker - How - make - green?

▶ ?

13 plants - Most - grow - soil - in.

▶

14 work - survive - They - together - to.

▶

15 do - live - pets - usually - Where?

▶ ?

Revision Test on Unit 2

30

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

Birds are warm-blooded, but they don't have fur or hair. All birds have feathers, and they all have wings. Birds lay eggs which are hard. Most birds can fly, but some can't. They have beaks, which are made of bone. Their beaks are different shapes because they eat different food. Some birds eat meat, some eat nuts and some eat seeds.

1. Birds don't have (feathers - beaks - fur - wings).
2. Birds are (cool - cold - warm - not) -blooded.
3. Birds have (wings - fur - beaks - feathers) which are made of bone.
4. Their beaks are (same - similar - different - alike) shapes.

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box: (3Ms)

eggs - warm - fur - cold

Mammals have hair or ① on their bodies. They are ② - blooded. They feed their babies with milk and most of them give birth to their babies. They don't lay ③

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below: (5Ms)

A teacher's job at school is a very difficult one. A teacher should help every student in class to get the most of what is explained. A teacher should draw their eyes and ears to the explanation in an enjoyable and easy way. A teacher should be all ears when listening to their questions. A successful teacher should be patient, hard working, friendly and helpful. But it is not always that simple. It is very hard for any teacher to make forty or fifty students quiet and ready to hear what will be said all through the lesson. That is especially clear at the primary stage where students are always noisy, active and childish.

A Choose the correct answer:

1 The underlined word "their" refers to (teachers - students - jobs - subjects).
2 The writer thinks the teacher's job is (noisy - nice - childish - difficult).
3 The teacher works at (hospital - school - home - office).

B Answer these questions:

4 How are students at the primary stage different?

▶

5 Why isn't the teacher's job always easy?

▶

The Reader (Khayameya Summer) (4Ms)

4 A. Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1 Zeinab was bored. ()
2 Grandpa is sad at the moment. ()

B Choose the correct answer:

3 It was the (first - second - third - fourth) week of the summer holiday.
4 Zeinab got off the (car - bus - train - ferry).

5 Choose the correct answer: (5Ms)

1 The blue whale is (bigger than - bigger - the biggest - big) than the shark.
2 The Asian elephant is (smaller - small - smaller than - the smallest) the African elephant.
3 Adam is the (young - younger - youngest - a young) boy in the family.
4 Ostriches are (faster - fast - faster than - the fastest) leopards.
5 The tortoise moves (slow - quick - slowly- careful).

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

1 eggs - Mammals - lay - don't.

▶

2 is - the biggest - The blue whale - in the world - animal.

▶

3 Can - move - spider - the - very – quickly?

▶

7 Write a text of (40) words using the following guiding elements: (6Ms)

"Your pet"

Ideas to help you:
- Do you have a cat or a dog?
- What are the advantages of having a pet?
- What are the disadvantages of having a pet?
- Do you like your pet?

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....



Revision on Unit 3

1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

work – people – neighborhood – community

A community is a group of ① who live and work together in the same area. A ② is more than your house, family, or your ③ It is a mixture of people, places, activities, and ideas. My community includes my family, my friends, and my school.

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

north – history – Nile – Egypt

Egypt is a country with a very long and interesting ① At first, there were two separate areas. Lower Egypt was in the ②, where the Nile joins the sea. Upper Egypt was in the south, where the ③ flows through the deserts of Africa.

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

wind – string – singers – musicians

Egypt has lots of traditional folk music. Folk ① from Upper Egypt play Saidi music. This type of music uses ② instruments such as violins, and ③ instruments such as the oboe. Singing and drumming is also a key part.

4 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

music – dancers – lively – sticks

Nubian dancing is ① and colorful. People move their arms and feet to the rhythm of the ② Raqs Assaya is probably the most famous dance from the Saidi musical tradition. The ③ use sticks (Assaya) and step quickly in special patterns.

5 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

music – singing – events – instruments

Walid : Do you know much about the Egyptian folk music?

Maher : Yes. Egypt has lots of traditional folk music. There are different styles from different parts of the country.

Walid : What are the most popular ❶ in Bedouin music?

Maher : They are the shabbaba and the rebaba.

Walid : What does Bedouin music include?

Maher : Bedouin music often includes ❷

Walid : What are songs about?

Maher : Songs are usually about special ❸

6 Choose the correct answer:

1. This is my neighborhood. It's (yours - his - hers - mine).
2. This is our school. It's (ours - yours - hers - theirs).
3. Those are Rasha's books. They're (his - ours - hers - mine).
4. Mona has a red dress. The red dress is (theirs - his - hers - ours).
5. This isn't my pencil. It's (yours - ours - mine - your).
6. Take your present, Mona. It's (yours - ours - his - hers).
7. These boots are Hala's. They are (her - he - hers - she).
8. This is not my bag. It's (you - her - your - yours).
9. Jehan has a pet cat. It's (his - hers - my - yours).
10. People (starting - started - starts - start) to live near the Nile about 9,000 years ago.
11. The pharaoh, Mena (joined - joins - joining - join) the two parts of Egypt long ago.
12. Mom(making - makes - make - made) us a chocolate cake yesterday.
13. He (don't - doesn't - do - didn't) write his homework yesterday.

14 Did you (watched - watches - watch - watching) TV last night?

15 I (played - plays - playing - play) tennis with my friends last week.

7 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 was - Egypt - north - Lower - in - the.

▶

2 Upper - was - Where - Egypt?

▶ ?

3 were - people - very - Scribes - important.

▶

4 do - you - Where - live?

▶ ?

5 live - Governorate - in - the - Red - I - Sea.

▶

6 27 governorates - are - today - There - in - Egypt.

▶

7 has - lots of - Egypt - traditional - music - folk.

▶

8 kind of - music - What - do - like - you?

▶ ?

9 music - Egypt - is - popular - Nubian - all - over.

▶

10 costumes - wear - special - Dancers.

▶

11 Egypt - dancing - Folk - has - a long - history - in.

▶

12 high - mountains - There - are - a river - next - to.

▶

Revision Test on Unit 3

30

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

Egypt is a country with a very long and interesting history. People started to live near the Nile about 9,000 years ago, in 7000 BCE. At first, there were two separate areas. Lower Egypt was in the north, Upper Egypt was in the south. In about 3200 BCE, one pharaoh, Mena joined these two parts to unite the country of Egypt.

1. Egypt is a (country - town - city - village) with a very long and interesting history.
2. People started to live near the (Valley - Delta - Nile - Sea) about 9,000 years ago.
3. Upper Egypt was in the (north - west - east - south).
4. In about 3200 BCE, one pharaoh, Mena joined these two parts to (unite - separate - draw - flow) the country of Egypt.

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box: (3Ms)

Upper - live - Middle – High

Heba : Hi, Salma.
Salma : Hello, Heba.
Heba : Where do you 1?
Salma : I live in Aswan Governorate.
Heba : Where does it lie?
Salma : In the furthest south in 2 Egypt.
Heba : What is it famous for?
Salma : It's famous for the 3 Dam.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below: (5Ms)

Last Saturday evening, Tamer watched a long film on TV, so he went to bed very late. The next morning, he couldn't get up early. He got out of the house and ran to school. He forgot to prepare his bag of books well. At school, he had English and then he had science. In the class, he didn't find his pen or his English book which he was going to use. He tried to borrow them from his friends, but they couldn't give him what he wanted because they were using them. His teachers weren't pleased with him. They advised him not to do that again. He was sorry and promised to go to bed early and get up early after that.

A Choose the correct answer:

1 Tamer got up late on (Saturday - Sunday - Monday - Tuesday).
2 He got up late because he didn't go to bed (well - good - late - early).
3 Tamer's teachers were (pleased - comfortable - angry - happy) with him.

B Answer these questions:

4 What does the underlined word "that" refer to?

▶

5 What did Tamer promise to do?

▶

The Reader (Coral Reefs) (4Ms)

4 A. Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1 Coral reefs are homes for many other animals. ()
2 Coral polyps can only live in warm water. ()

B Choose the correct answer:

3 Tropical fish often have bright colors so they can (hide - hunt - jump - play) safely in a reef.
4 The reefs need (home - sunlight - dust - storm) to live and to grow.

5 Choose the correct answer: (5Ms)

1. This is our house. It's (theirs - mine - ours - hers).
2. Mom (make - makes - making - made) us a delicious meal yesterday.
3. These are Tamer's shoes. They're (hers - his - ours - mine).
4. Did you (listened - listen - listens - listening) to the radio last night?
5. My friends bought a new bag. It's (theirs - yours - hers - ours).

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

1. didn't - his - homework- yesterday - write - He.

▶

2. was - south - Upper - the - in - Egypt.

▶

3. is - Why - important - Alexandria?

▶ ?

7 Write a text of (40) words using the following guiding elements: (6Ms)

"Your community"

Ideas to help you: family – neighborhood - friends – school

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....



Revision on Unit 4

1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

pedestrian – populated – congestion – inhabitants

I live in Greater Cairo. It's a metropolitan area and densely ① There are more than 20 million ②, so it's a very busy place. There are a lot of cars so there's also ③ If you are a pedestrian, you have to be very careful.

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

goats – geese – grows – village

I live in a small ① on the Nile. My dad's a farmer. He ② tomatoes, potatoes, dates, and onions. We have some animals too. There are six sheep, two buffaloes and some donkeys in my village. You can see cats in the street and if you're lucky, you might see some beautiful Egyptian ③ on the river.

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

artisans – carpets – crafts – workshop

Last summer I really wanted to learn about traditional Egyptian ① So, my grandma took me to a spinning and weaving ② so that I could learn about this craft. The guide explained how the ③ make the carpets while we watched them weave.

4 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

apartment – Alexandria – city – population

I live in Alexandria. It's a beautiful ① on the Mediterranean Sea. As you might know, it's the second largest city in Egypt with a ② of more than 5 million people. It has an important port and there is a lot of industry here too. I live with my family in an ③ in a neighborhood called Amrya.

5 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

family – babies – traditional – urban

Hazem : How are you, Waleed?
Waleed : Fine. I hope you're too.
Hazem : Do you live in an apartment or a house?
Waleed : My family and I live in a ① house.
Hazem : How many people are there in your ②?
Waleed : There are five people in my family.
Hazem : Do you have any brothers or sisters?
Waleed : Yes. I have two sisters, but there aren't any ③ because we're all grown up.

6 Choose the correct answer:

1. I always wash my hands (before - though - while - although) I have my meal.
2. Dad finished all his work (even though - after - as soon as - because) he was tired.
3. I study hard (although - because - even though - so that) I can get high grades.

4 I telephoned the police (before - as soon as - although - even though) I saw the thief.

5 I always do my homework (while - as soon as - before - after) I go to bed.

6 I buy my little sister an ice cream (before - although - even though - every time) I have enough money. She likes it very much.

7 They have to clean, wash and dry the wool (although -after - before - while) they can use it.

8 (As soon as - While - So - So that) the yarn is dry, they can use it to weave a carpet.

9 I'll take you to the park (as soon as - though - while - although) I've finished this.

10 You have to cook the egg (after - before - while - as soon as) you eat it.

11 Dina brought her phone (so that - although - even though - as soon as) she could take some photos.

12 The teacher talked to us (after - so that - while - but) we listened carefully.

13 The farmer has three (goat - geese - cow - buffalo).

14 There is one (boys - girls - children - child) in the class.

7 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 is - a - Cairo - area - metropolitan.

▶

2 do - you - Where - live?

▶

3 have - You - to - careful - be - very.

▶

4 My - dad - is - a - farmer.

▶

5 you - any brothers - have - Do - sisters - or?

▶

6 can - see - You - the - cats - in - street.

▶

7 prefer - people - dark - Some - colors.

▶

8 need - They - to - dye - yarn - the.

▶

9 collect - sheep - the - They - wool - from.

▶

10 live - with - my - an apartment - family - I - in.

▶

11 has - port - an - Alexandria - important.

▶

12 visit - hope - you - I - one day - Alexandria.

▶

Revision Test on Unit 4

30

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

My name's Waleed. I live in a small village on the Nile. My dad is a farmer. He grows tomatoes, potatoes, dates, and onions. We have some animals in the yard. There are six sheep and two buffaloes. There are some donkeys in my village, but my family doesn't have one now.

1 I live in a small (town - city - village - country) on the Nile.
2 My dad is a (doctor - teacher - vet - farmer).
3 My dad grows tomatoes, potatoes, dates and (figs - onions - oranges - watermelons).
4 There are (two - three - five - six) sheep and two buffaloes in the yard.

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box: (3Ms)

canal - population - port - Sea

I'm Dina. I live in Alexandria. It's a beautiful city on the Mediterranean ① It's the second largest city in Egypt with a ② of more than 5 million people. It has an important ③ and there is a lot of industry here, too.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below: (5Ms)

Egypt is one of the most important tourist countries in the whole world. Every winter, thousands of tourists from Europe, America and Asia come to spend their holidays in different parts of Egypt. They enjoy our fine weather, sunshine and nature. It's very cold in their countries.

Tourists from the Arab and African countries prefer to visit Cairo, Alexandria and other sea towns in the summer. They also enjoy seeing our ancient treasures. It is believed that he who drinks from the water of the Nile will surely come back to Egypt again.

A Choose the correct answer:

1 The weather in Egypt in winter is (colder - warmer - cloudier - cooler) than the weather in Europe.
2 Tourists who visit Egypt are (Arabs - African - French - of all nationalities).
3 Arab and African tourists visit Egypt in (winter - summer - spring - autumn).

B Answer these questions:

4 What do tourists from Europe and America enjoy in Egypt?

▶

5 What does the underlined word "They" refer to?

▶

The Reader (Khayameya Summer) (4Ms)

4 A. Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1 Zeinab went to Grandpa by car. ()
2 Grandpa's eyes are not very good now. ()

B Choose the correct answer:

3 Zeinab and her grandfather visited the (shop - farm - cave - park).
4 Grandpa also likes sewing (insects - animals - fish - birds).

5 Choose the correct answer: (5Ms)

1 I always wash my hands (because - while - before - although) I eat.
2 I study hard (although - because - so that - while) I can get high marks.

3 Adam missed the bus (so that - although - as soon as - because) he got up early.

4 Wolves (is - was - am - are) dangerous animals.

5 There's one (child - women - children - men) in the park.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

1 apartment - big - isn't - Her.

▶

2 in - lives - My - family- home - a traditional.

▶

3 it - Is - sparsely - or - populated - densely?

▶

7 Write an email of (40) words to your friend Nora: (6Ms)

Tell her about your city and how many people live in it. Your name is Heba and your email address is heba@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is nora@hotmail.com.

From:

To:

Subject:

.....

.....

.....

Revision on Unit 5

1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

resources – materials – purposes – nature

Natural resources are ① that we get from ② People use these materials for different purposes. If you look around your classroom, you will probably see different types of them. Stone and wood are all natural ③ ! Minerals and metal are also natural resources.

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

electrical – transfer – mechanical – energy

We can't destroy energy. We can only change it from one kind of energy to another kind. This is called ① of energy. When we use solar panels to collect sunlight, the solar energy is turned into ② energy. When we use this electrical energy for a television, it is now ③ energy.

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

wind – petroleum – non-renewable – Renewable

Ghada : Good morning, teacher.
Teacher : Good morning, Ghada.
Ghada : Could you tell me some information about renewable resources?
Teacher : ① resources can be naturally replaced when they run out.
Ghada : Would you give me examples of renewable resources?
Teacher : The sun, wind and falling water are examples of renewable resources.
Ghada : What about ② resources?
Teacher : They cannot be replaced. Once we have used all of them up, we can't get any more here on Earth.
Ghada : Would you give me examples of non-renewable resources?
Teacher : These are things like metals and ③

4 Choose the correct answer:

1. My dad (drinking - drink - drank - drinks) a cup of coffee after every meal.
2. He sometimes (read - reads - am reading - is reading) a story before going to bed.
3. (Does - Do - Am - Are) she walk to school?
4. Heba (plays - play - are playing - playing) basketball on Saturday.
5. Fathers often (work - works - working - worked) day and night.
6. He (get - getting - gets - are getting) up in the morning.
7. Ali (like - don't like - doesn't like - is like) cherries.
8. (Does - Is - Do - Doing) you like the food?
9. Amgad doesn't (watch - watches - watched - watching) TV.
10. We all love (their - his - my - our) school.
11. They like (my - our - her - their) new teacher.
12. The monkey has a tail. (Its - His - My - Her) tail is long.
13. Samira has a new dress. (Her - His - Our - My) dress is blue.
14. Hala and Hend help (our - their - his - her) mother.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. stone - to - We - buildings - use - construct.
 ▶
2. of - it - made - wood - Is?
 ▶ ?
3. school - is - your - What - of - made?
 ▶ ?
4. and - gas - Oil - are - fossil - fuels.
 ▶
5. do - How - they - electricity - make?
 ▶ ?
6. are - building - farm - They - a - solar.
 ▶

Revision Test on Unit 5



1 Listen and choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

We need to make electricity. We can burn fossil fuels like oil and gas, but they will run out. We can also make electricity from renewable resources like the wind and water. We have so much sunshine in the desert, so it is the perfect place for a solar farm. The solar panels collect energy from the sun and we can make that into electricity for our homes.

1. We have so much (water - metal - sunshine - electricity) in the desert.
2. The solar (fuels - turbines - panels - patterns) collect energy from the sun.
3. We can burn fossil fuels like oil and (electricity - wind - water - gas).
4. The wind and water are (renewable - non-renewable - solar - mechanical) resources.

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box: (3Ms)

materials - purposes - wood - nature

Mariam : Do you know what are natural resources?
Sara : Yes. They are materials which we get from 1
Mariam : Why do people use these materials?
Sara : People use them for different 2
Mariam : Are stone and 3 natural materials?
Sara : Yes, they are.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below: (5Ms)

Cairo is a very crowded city because millions of people live in it. Crowdedness becomes worse when thousands of people from different parts of the country come to visit the capital. They come to Cairo on business or for visits.

Some of the streets in Cairo were not made for the great number of people and cars we see today. One should be very careful to be able to go home safe and alive. If people are not careful, accidents will happen. One should drive carefully and people who don't have a car should walk on the pavement to be safe.

A Choose the correct answer:

1 Cairo is a large (country - village - town - city).
2 (Ten - Twenty - Hundreds - Thousands) of people visit Cairo every day.
3 Crowdedness becomes worse when (tourists - visitors - doctors - salesmen) come to Cario.

B Answer these questions:

4 Why is Cairo crowded?
▶
5 What should people who don't have cars do?
▶

The Reader (Coral Reefs) (4Ms)

4 A. Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1 The Red Sea coral reef is the third largest reef system in the world. ()
2 At the moment, the sea and oceans on Earth are getting warmer. ()

B Choose the correct answer:

3 When a reef loses its color, the coral (lives - dies - nourishes - leaves).
4 The water of the Red Sea is (warmer - colder - cooler - dirtier) than other seas.

5 Choose the correct answer: (5Ms)

1. My dad (drinking - drink - drinks - to drink) a cup of tea every day.
2. Ramy doesn't (like - likes - don't like - liked) eating chocolate.
3. (Do - Does - Doing - Did) you walk to school every day?
4. Amany (watch - watches - watching - are watching) TV in the afternoon.
5. Hager has a dress. (Her - His - Its - Our) dress is green.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

1. can't - We - destroy - energy.

▶

2. petroleum - Is - made - it - from?

▶ ?

3. very - is - Teamwork - important - success - for.

▶

7 Write a text of (40) words using the following guiding elements: (6Ms)

"Your school day"

Ideas to help you:
- When do you get up?
- What do you have for breakfast?
- How do you go to school?
- What subjects do you have at school?
- When do you go home?

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....



Revision on Unit 6

1 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

foot - kite - car - friends

Kareem : Where will you go next weekend?

Omar : I will go to the park.

Kareem : How will you go?

Omar : I'll go by ❶

Kareem : Who will you go with?

Omar : I'll go with my ❷

Kareem : What will you do there?

Omar : I'll fly my ❸

2 Choose the correct answer:

1. He (will come - comes - coming - came) tomorrow morning.
2. She'll (goes - gone - going - go) swimming on Thursday.
3. It (rains - will rain - rain - rained) tomorrow.
4. No, I (will - won't - is - am) go to the park. It's very hot outside.
5. Where (will - do - does - did) you go tomorrow?
6. Tomorrow, they (visit - visited - visiting - will visit) us.
7. They will (saw - see - seen - sees) lots of things in the museum.
8. Yes, I (am - will - are - won't) do my homework before going to bed.
9. (Will - Did - Is - Are) you visit your grandparents next weekend?
10. People (go - goes - went - will go) to the moon for holidays in the future.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 take - Aswan - train - to - Will - they - a?

▶ ?

2 a - ship - travel - on - She - will.

▶

3 Mars - won't - day - on - one - I - live.

▶

4 job - would - Which - to do - you - like?

▶ ?

5 do - passwords - you - When - use?

▶ ?

6 your - tell - friends - passwords - Don't - your.

▶

7 did - Amr's - Where - from - ship - come?

▶ ?

8 does - live - Heba - Where?

▶ ?

9 will - visit - come - He - and - us.

▶

Revision Test on Unit 6

30

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

There are many ways of transporting goods and products over long or short distances. First, we can transport goods long distances by water. Ships move slowly but they can carry large items such as automobiles and machinery. Second, we can transport goods long distances by air. Airplanes are faster than ships so air travel is good for transporting fresh food. Next, rail, road and pipelines are also used for transportation.

1. (Ships - Trains - Airplanes - Cars) can transport goods long distances by water.
2. Airplanes can transport goods long distances by (air- water - road - rail).
3. Airplanes are (slower - faster - smaller - shorter) than ships.
4. Air travel is good for transporting fresh (food - oil - gas - water).

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box: (3Ms)

planes - Canal - slowly - captain

Heba looked out of the window of her family's house at the ships going along the Suez 1 They were so big. The ship moves so 2 Heba loved watching the ships. She liked to be a 3 because she thinks that it's a relaxing job.

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below: (5Ms)

The Library of Alexandria was first built in the fourth century BC. It was the world's first university. Unluckily, a fire broke out and destroyed it. Egypt asked the world's peoples to help in rebuilding the library.

Many countries agreed to help in this project. President Mubarak opened the new library on 16th October 2002. A lot of very important people from all over the world came to see that great event.

The modern library is a base for researchers everywhere. It also includes a library for children from the age of six to that of thirteen. If it happens that you go to Alexandria, you can visit this great library.

A Choose the correct answer:

1 A/An (fire - earthquake - volcano - storm) destroyed the Library of Alexandria in the past.

2 (A lot of people - No one - No body - A few people) came to see the opening of the library.

3 The underlined word "It" refers to the (fire - school - library - base).

B Answer these questions:

4 When was the Library of Alexandria first built?

▶

5 How long has the modern library been opene to people?

▶

The Reader (Khayameya Summer) (4Ms)

4 A. Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1 Zeinab wishes she could sew and help Grandpa. ()

2 Grandpa loves his job. ()

B Choose the correct answer:

3 Grandpa's (grandfather - grandmother - father - mother) taught him how to sew.

4 Zeinab's friends want to learn about (carpets - Khayameya - art - colors), too.

5 Choose the correct answer: (5Ms)

1 People (travel - traveled - will travel - traveling) to Mars for vacation in 2052.
2 No, they (will - won't - am - are) go to the library. It's very hot outside.
3 We (visit - visits - visited - will visit) our grandpa tomorrow.
4 Next week, the weather will (am - is - are - be) nice.
5 They went to France (in - by - at - on) airplane.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

1 will - a - Mona - ship - travel - on.

▶

2 the - sit - won't - window - by - Amir.

▶

3 English - will - you use - future - How - in the?

▶?

7 Write an email of (40) words to your friend Adam: (6Ms)

Tell him about your favorite means of transportation. Your name is Ali and your email address is ali@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is adam@gmail.com.

From:

To:

Subject:

.....

.....

.....

Model Answers

Revision on Unit 1

1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

1 digestive 2 stomach 3 nutrients

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

1 senses 2 smell 3 tongue

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

1 brain 2 cerebrum 3 stem

4 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

1 Paralympic 2 disabilities 3 athletes

5 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

1 healthy 2 Physical 3 Mental

6 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

1 runner 2 races 3 national

7 Choose the correct answer:

1 is	2 have	3 does	4 play	5 controls
6 joins	7 tidy	8 looks	9 goes	10 am
11 likes	12 plays	13 make	14 see	15 plays

8 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 We chew and swallow food.
2 Our heart pumps blood around our body.
3 We breath in air through our nose.

4 We use our senses every week.
5 We use our eyes to see.
6 We use our ears to hear.
7 What are we doing today, Mom?
8 Adam goes to the park every day.
9 We have to tidy the lounge.
10 It takes place every four years.
11 Aya Ayman Abbas is a swimming champion.
12 She won lots of gold medals.
13 Mental activities are good for our brain.
14 Kareema wants to do something creative.
15 Physical activity is good for your body.

Revision Test on Unit 1

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

1 four 2 athletes 3 sports 4 Egypt

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

1 science 2 like 3 doctor

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below:

1 interesting 2 English 3 abroad
4 It's spoken by a lot of people in different countries.
5 If you ever think of going to foreign countries, you will find English move and more useful. Good English also gives you better chances for work.

4 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1 F 2 F
3 invertebrates 4 oceans

5 Choose the correct answer:

1 plays 2 pumps 3 look 4 goes 5 am always

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 Mental activities are good for our brain.
2 What are you doing today, Ali?
3 You shouldn't develop unhealthy habits.

7 Write a text of (40) words using the following guiding elements:

"Your favorite sport"

I like sports very much. My favorite sport is football. It's exciting and fun. I play it in the club on Fridays. I won a bronze medal in a competition last year. Playing sports is very important to our bodies and it makes us healthy.

Revision on Unit 2

1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

1 hair 2 mammals 3 Bats

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

1 enormous 2 elephant 3 blue whale

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

1 Invertebrates 2 protection 3 soft

4 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

1 colors 2 attract 3 reproduce

5 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

1 soil 2 leaf 3 stem

6 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

1 smallest 2 live 3 biggest

7 Choose the correct answer:

1 smaller	2 bigger than	3 the biggest	4 the smallest	5 older
6 the tallest	7 shorter	8 fastest	9 bigger	10 slowly
11 larger than	12 quietly	13 loudly	14 careful	15 fast
16 well	17 good	18 slowly		

8 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 Mammals feed their babies with milk.
2 Fish use fins to move.
3 Most mammals live on land.
4 The ostrich is the biggest bird.
5 How big is a whale shark?
6 Ostriches are faster than leopards.
7 Can I look on the internet quickly?
8 Crabs have a hard shell for protection.
9 The spider can move very quickly.
10 Primary colors are red, yellow, and blue.
11 We can mix red and yellow to make orange.
12 How do you make green darker?
13 Most plants grow in soil.
14 They work together to survive.
15 Where do pets usually live?

Revision Test on Unit 2

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

1 fur 2 warm 3 beaks 4 different

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

1 fur 2 warm 3 eggs

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below:

1 students 2 difficult 3 school

4 They are always noisy, active and childish.

5 Because it is very hard for any teacher to make forty or fifty students quiet and ready to near what will be said all through the lesson.

4 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1 T 2 T

3 second 4 train

5 Choose the correct answer:

1 bigger 2 smaller than 3 youngest 4 faster than 5 slowly

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 Mammals don't lay eggs.

2 The blue whale is the biggest animal in the world.

3 Can the spider move very quickly?

7 Write a text of (40) words using the following guiding elements:

"My pet"

I think having a pet is very nice. On one hand, it's fun. I have a cat. It is called Mishmish. I like it very much. I spend a lot of time playing with it. But on the other hand, it needs much care, special food, and a place to sleep. It also needs to walk outside from time to time and go to the vet if it's ill.

Revision on Unit 3

1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

1 people 2 community 3 neighborhood

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

1 history 2 north 3 Nile

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

1 musicians 2 string 3 wind

4 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

1 lively 2 music 3 dancers

5 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

1 instruments 2 singing 3 events

6 Choose the correct answer:

1 mine	2 ours	3 hers	4 hers	5 yours
6 yours	7 hers	8 yours	9 hers	10 started
11 joined	12 made	13 didn't	14 watch	15 played

7 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 Lower Egypt was in the north.
2 Where was Upper Egypt?
3 Scribes were very important people.
4 Where do you live?
5 I live in the Red Sea Governorate.
6 There are 27 governorates in Egypt today.
7 Egypt has lots of traditional folk music.
8 What kind of music do you like?

9 Nubian music is popular all over Egypt.
10 Dancers wear special costumes.
11 Folk dancing has a long history in Egypt.
12 There are high mountains next to a river.

Revision Test on Unit 3

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

1 country 2 Nile 3 south 4 unite

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

1 live 2 upper 3 High

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below:

1 Sunday 2 early 3 angry
4 Going to bed late and forgetting to prepare his bags of books well. he didn't find his pen or his English book which he was going to use.
5 He promised to go to bed early and get up early after that.

4 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1 T 2 F
3 hide 4 sunlight

5 Choose the correct answer:

1 ours 2 made 3 his 4 listen 5 theirs

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 He didn't write his homework yesterday.
2 Upper Egypt was in the south.

3 Why is Alexandria important?

7 Write a text of (40) words using the following guiding elements:

"My Community"

I love my community. My community includes my family, my friends, and my school. We all respect each other in our neighborhood. We don't fight, and we help the old people to cross the road or carry the heavy bags from them. We don't throw trash in the street and we keep our neighborhood clean.

Revision on Unit 4

1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

1 populated 2 inhabitants 3 congestion

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

1 village 2 grows 3 geese

3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

1 crafts 2 workshop 3 artisans

4 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

1 city 2 population 3 apartment

5 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

1 traditional 2 family 3 babies

6 Choose the correct answer:

1 before	2 even though	3 so that	4 as soon as	5 before
6 every time	7 before	8 As soon as	9 as soon as	10 before

11 so that 12 so that 13 geese 14 child

7 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 Cairo is a metropolitan area.
2 Where do you live?
3 You have to be very careful.
4 My dad is a farmer.
5 Do you have any brothers or sisters?
6 You can see cats in the street.
7 Some people prefer dark colors.
8 They need to dye the yarn.
9 They collect wool from the sheep.
10 I live with my family in an apartment.
11 Alexandria has an important port.
12 I hope you visit Alexandria one day.

Revision Test on Unit 4

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

1 village 2 farmer 3 onions 4 six

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

1 sea 2 population 3 port

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below:

1 warmer 2 of all nationalities 3 winter
4 They enjoy our fine weather, sunshine and nature.
5 Tourists from the Arab and African countries.

4 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1 F 2 T
3 shop 4 birds

5 Choose the correct answer:

1 before 2 so that 3 although 4 are 5 child

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 Her apartment isn't big.
2 My family lives in a traditional home.
3 Is it sparsely or densely populated?

7 Write an email of (40) words to your friend Nora:

From: heba@gmail.com
To: nora@hotmail.com
Subject: My City

Dear Nora,

How are you? I hope you're fine. I want to tell you about my city. It is a beautiful city. I live in Alexandria. It's the second largest city in Egypt with a population of more than 5 million people. It has an important port and there is a lot of industry here too. What about your city?

Best wishes,
Heba

Revision on Unit 5

1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

1 materials 2 nature 3 resources

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

1 transfer 2 electrical 3 mechanical

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

1 Renewable 2 non-renewable 3 petroleum

4 Choose the correct answer:

1 drinks	2 reads	3 Does	4 plays	5 work
6 gets	7 doesn't like	8 Do	9 watch	10 our
11 their	12 Its	13 Her	14 their	

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 We use stone to construct buildings.
2 Is it made of wood?
3 What is your school made of?
4 Oil and gas are fossil fuels.
5 How do they make electricity?
6 They are building a solar farm.

Revision Test on Unit 5

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

1 sunshine 2 panels 3 gas 4 renewable

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

1 nature 2 purposes 3 wood

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below:

1 city 2 Thousands 3 visitors
4 Because millions of people live in it.
5 They should walk on the pavement to be safe.

4 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1 T 2 T
3 dies 4 warmer

5 Choose the correct answer:

1 drinks 2 like 3 Do 4 watches 5 Her

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 We can't destroy energy.
2 Is it made from petroleum?
3 Teamwork is very important for success.

7 Write a text of (40) words using the following guiding elements:

"My School day"

I get up at 6 am. I have cheese, eggs and beans for breakfast. I go to school by bus. I have English, Arabic, science and maths at school. I go home at 2 pm. I really love my school day.

Revision on Unit 6

1 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

1 car 2 friends 3 kite

2 Choose the correct answer:

1 will come 2 go 3 will rain 4 won't 5 will
6 will visit 7 see 8 will 9 Will 10 will go

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 Will they take a train to Aswan?
2 She will travel on a ship.
3 I won't live on Mars one day.
4 Which job would you like to do?
5 When do you use passwords?
6 Don't tell your friends your passwords.

7 Where did Amr's ship come from?
8 Where does Heba live?
9 He will come and visit us.

Revision Test on Unit 6

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

1 Ships 2 air 3 faster 4 food

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

1 Canal 2 slowly 3 captain

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below:

1 fire 2 A lot of people 3 library
4 It was first built in the fourth century BC.
5 It has been open to people for 21 years.

4 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1 T 2 T
3 father 4 Khayameya

5 Choose the correct answer:

1 will travel 2 won't 3 will visit 4 be 5 by

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 Mona will travel on a ship.
2 Amir won't sit by the window.
3 How will you use English in the future?

7 Write an email of (40) words to your friend Adam:

From: ali@yahoo.com
To: adam@gmail.com
Subject: My favorite means of transportation

Dear Adam,

How are you? I hope you're fine. I love traveling by plane. The plane is fast and comfortable, but it is expensive. When I grow up, I hope to be a pilot. I will be a pilot and travel all over the world. What about your favorite means of transportation?

Best wishes,
Ali

1. Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

her – apartment – his – metropolitan

Sally lives in a …….. city. She lives in a big ……. with ,…… family. The city is wonderful and has lots of services

2. Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

buses – congested – geese – although

I arrived home late …….. I left school early. There was a lot of cars and …….. The streets were ……

3. Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

blooded – swim – feathers – smallest

A bee hummingbird is not an insect. It is the …….. bird in the world. It has colorful…….. and it is warm-……

4. Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

community – because – citizenship – and

When you act in a way that is good for your …… , this is good …… . This means that you work hard to help others, …… behave in a kind way

4. Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

buffaloes – grows – geese – farmer

My uncle lives in a village. He is a farmer. He…….. potatoes and onions. He has three…….. and four sheep for meat and milk. His wife keeps some…….. that usually swim in the canal.

5. Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

liquid – breathe – energy – chew

When we eat, we …….. and swallow the food. The food then goes to the stomach. A special ……. changes the food into ……. and nutrients that we need in our bodies.

6. Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

combination – fingers – deaf – blind

People who are ……. can't see. They can learn to read Braille. Braille is a code using ……. of dots to make letters, numbers or words. People feel the dots with their ……... So, they are using the sense of touch.

7. Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

hearing – tongue – senses – toes

Your senses are very important for you. You depend on them every day.. Your senses are sight, ……., touch, smell and taste. Your …….. always work. Your sights let you read this book. Your ……. helps you taste food.

8. Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

dedication – sleeping – take part – athlete

Being a Paralympic or Olympic …….. takes years of …….. and hard work. Not everyone can get to this level, but there are many opportunities for everyone to …… and have fun doing sports.

9. Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

cool – Humans – cold – amphibians - backbone

Vertebrates are animals with a …….. There are five different types of vertebrates: mammals, reptiles, ……., fish and birds. …….. are mammals. Reptiles are ……..-blooded but birds are warm-blooded.

10. Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

exercise – enjoy – easy – routine - bad

Starting an exercise ……. is hard, but it's a good idea to try to do some …….. three to five times a week. It's easier if you find a sport you ……. doing , perhaps something you can do with friends. Find a time that is …….. for everyone in your family.

11. Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

soft – shells – chasers – land - Invertebrates

…… don't have backbones. They are cold-blooded. They live in the sea and some live on ……. Some have …… bodies and some have hard …….. Some invertebrates can swim and some can walk.

12. Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

patterns – crafts – weddings – carpet - curtain

There is a long history of traditional …….. in Egypt. Two of the most popular crafts are khayameya and …… making. In the past, tent makers created khayameya to decorate huge tents for …….. and other occasions. Khayameya …….. are beautifully designed using different colors.

13. Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

wind – string – styles – traditional - saidi

Egypt has lots of ……. folk music. There are different …… from different parts of the country. Folk music from Upper Egypt play …… music. People use …… instruments such as violins, and wind instruments such as the oboe.

14. Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

includes – together – community – neighborhood - behaves

A ……. is a group of people who live and work …… in the same area. A community is more than your house, family or your ……. It is a mixture of people, places and ideas. My community …… my family, my friends and my school.

Unit (1)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. ……is a group of organs responsible for digesting food.
 a. Digestive system b. Respiratory system
2. ……is a group of organs responsible for breathing in and out
 a. Digestive system b. Respiratory system
3. ……is the gas which humans breathe in.
 a. Oxygen b. Ice c. Sand d.Carbon dioxide
4. ……is the red liquid that goes round our bodies.
 a. Blood b. Heart c. Oxygen d. Skeleton
5. …… is the organs that pumps blood.
 a. Skeleton b. Blood c. System d. Heart
6. ……is all the bones and muscles in our our body.
 a. Heart b. Oxygen c. Skeleton d. Blood
7. ……..means feeling sad or unhappy.
 a. Savory b. Creative c. Excited d. Disappointed
8. A ……is a room in a house for relaxing and entertaining guests.
 a. champion b. lounge c. parasport d. brain
9. A ……is a winner of the first prize or place in a competition
 a. stem b. heart c. champion d. hemisphere
10. ……..are sports for people who have a disability.
 a. Brains b. Lounges c. Lungs d. Parasports

11. We use our …….. to see.
 a. ears b. legs c. lungs d. eyes
12. We smell with our ……...
 a. tongue b. nose c. ears d. eyes
13. We taste with our ……..
 a. nose b. tongue c. heart d. knee
14. We can feel with our ……
 a. skin b. bones c. nose d. ears
15. Our ……are working all the time.
 a. photos b. letters c. senses d. dots
16. People who are ……can’t hear.
 a. blind b. fat c. strong d. deaf

17. People who are ……can't see.
a. blind b. deaf c. thin d. weak
18. Our skeleton is made up of all the ……..in our body.
a. fingers b. toes c. bones d. hair
19. We ……food with our teeth.
a. drink b. hear c. smell d. chew
20. We ……food then it goes to our stomach.
a. hear b. see c. swallow d. touch
21. We use our respiratory system when we …….
a. protect b. feel c. breathe d. change
22. ……..are attached to our bones and help us move.
a. Teeth b. Muscles c. Lungs d. Hearts
23. Deaf people use …… to communicate with others.
a. Braille b. dots c. skeleton d. sign language
24. Blind people use ……..to read.
a. heart b. stomach c. Braille d. sign language
25. A special liquid changes the food into energy and ……...
a. muscles b. nutrients c. bones d. dots
26. Our heart ……blood around ouor body.
a. thinks b. drinks c. breathes d. pumps
27. Braille has different combinations of …….
a. sports b. lungs c. muscles d. dots
28. Rana had an accident and lost her …… She is blind now.
a. sight b. hearing c. touch d. smell
29. I enjoy eating cakes and sweets. I don't like ……..foods.
a. kind b. sweet c. savory d. exciting
30. A special liquid changes the food into energy in our ……...
a. brain b. stomach c. ear d. lung

31. Our ……..controls how we move and what we remember .
a. blood b. lounge c. eye d. brain
32. Being an Olympic athlete takes years of ……...
a. pollution b. dedication c. station d. population
33. People from different countries can ……in the Olympics.
a. take care b. take part c. take place d. take off
34. ……..games is an international competition for the disabled
a. Olympic b. Female c. Paralympic d. Hard

35. Athletes with ……practise parasports.
a. disabilities b. medals c. areas d. disabilities
36. The cerebrum and the cerebellum are joind by the ……..
a. brain stem b. skeleton c. bones d. lungs
37. This artist is …… He draws amazing pictures.
a. disappointed b. olympic c. creative d. wrong
38. Egyptian athletes have won lots of gold ……..
a. champions b. medals c. areas d. models
39.The Paralympic games is ……in a different country each time.
a. build b. send c. mend d. held
40. You should work ……to get high marks.
a. badly b. hard c. slowly d. sadly

41. I got bored! My daily ……. is the same.
a. muscle b. routine c. skill d. suagr
42. I usually follow my teacher's ……to get high marks
a. tips b. minerals c. camps d. taps
43. Our cousin is creative. He often has new ……..
a. vitamins b. calories c. fruits d. ideas
44. ……..activities make our muscles strong.
a. Mental b. Bad c. Physical d. Nervous
45. ……activities are good for our brain.
a. Nervous b. Mental c. Sad d. Physical
46. You can play and learn new skills in our summer ……
a. mineral b. health c. tip d. camp
47. Always try not to develop ……habits to stay fit.
a. kind b. unhealthy c. healthy d. good
48. Cycling, walking and running are physical ……
a. areas b. medals c. activities d. snacks
49. We all need to eat a good ……to stay healthy.
a. diet b. snake c. system d. activity
50. People eat unhealthy ……while they are watching TV.
a. snakes b. activities c. snacks d. areas

Unit (2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. ……are animals that have a backbone.
 a. Invertebrates b. Vertebrates
2. ……..are warm blooded and give birth.
 a. Mammals b. Reptiles c. Amphibians d. Birds
3. ……..live in water and take in oxygen through their gills .
 a. Mammals b. Reptiles c. Amphibians d. Fish
4. ……are cold-blood animals that can live on land and on water.
 a. Amphibians b. Birds c. Fish d. Mammals
5. A/An……are warm-blood vertebrates with feathers.
 a. Birds b. Fish c. Amphibians d. Reptiles
6. Mammals have hair or ……on their bodies.
 a. scales b. gills c. feathers d. fur
7. Mammals ……their babies with milk.
 a. eat b. drink c. feed d. breathe
8. Some vertebrates spend time in the sun to keep ……..
 a. cool b. warm c. cold d. windy
9. All reptiles ……eggs.
 a. breathe b. eat c. feed d. lay
10. Reptiles have ……
 a. hair b. fur c. scales d. feathers
11. Fish use ……..to move in water.
 a. beaks b. wings c. feathers d. fins
12. Birds have ……which are made of bone.
 a. wings b. fins c. beaks d. feathers
13. The whale ……..is the biggest fish in the world.
 a. elephant b. monkey c. shark d. octopus
14. The African ……is the biggest mammal on land.
 a. monkey b. elephant c. whale d. shark
15. The ……is the biggest bird, but it can't fly.
 a. ostrich b. penguin c. eagle d. pelican
16. The smallest reptile in the world is a/an ……
 a. elephant b. whale c. snake d. chameleon
17. ……are animals without a backbone.
 a. Vertebrates b. Invertebrates

18. ……are cold-blooded invertebrates including spiders and scorpions.
a. Birds b. Arachnids c. Mammals d. Fish
19. A/An ……hunts and eats other animlas.
a. prey b. insect c. bird d. predator
20. A/An……is the animal that is caught and eaten.
a. predator b. prey c. beak d. wing
21. Red, yellow and blue are ……colors.
a. secondary b. primary
22. ……..colors make us think of sunlight and heat.
a. Warm b. Cold c. Bright d. Secondary
23. ……..colors can calm us and bring comfort.
a. Primary b. Warm c. Cold d. Secondary
24. Turtles have hard ……on their back.
a. fur b. shell c. wing d. feather
25. A/An……is a sea animal with soft body.
a. lizard b. bat c. jellyfish d. shark
26. Arachnids like spiders have ……legs.
a. six b. eight
27. When we add black to a color, it become ……
a. lighter b. darker
28. When we add white to a color, it become ……
a. lighter b. darker
29. I often ……from dad when I do something wrong.
a. ride b. feed c. swim d. hide
30. Insects carry …… from one flower to another.
a. prey b. shell c. pollen d. fin
31. Bright colors can be a warning that the animal is …….
a. dark b. poisonous c. weak d. cold
32. We do ……..activities to have strong muscles.
a. unhealthy b. lazy c. physical d. mental
33. It's unhealthy to eat too much ……
a. sugar b. juice c. apples d. carrots
34. To keep fit, try not to ……unhealthy habits.
a. eat b. drink c. develop d. breathe
35. Our teacher always gives us useful ……to study hard.
a. tapes b. taps c. tubes d. tips

36. Doing ……is important for a better life.
a. tips b. exercise c. homework d. mistakes

Unit (3)

1. A ……is a group of people who live together in the same area and share activities.
a. community b. citizenship c. dynasty d. pharaoh
2. A……..means the streets, houses, shops close to where you live.
a. citizenship b. neighborhood c. pharaoh d. dynasty
3. ……means behaving in a way that helps your society.
a. Membership b. Pharaoh c. Citizenship d. Kingdom
4. The ……is a title of ancient Egyptian king.
a. prince b. princess c. pharaoh d. queen
5. A……is an important family that ruled for many years.
a. community b. citizenship c. pharaph d. dynasty
6. Egypt is a city with a long ……..
a. tail b. pharaoh c. history d. date
7. ……used to write down everything happened in Egypt.
a. Papyrus b. Tombs c. Symbols d. Scribes
8. Scribes used to write everything happened in ……...
a. Hieroglyphs b. Chinese c. Spanish d. Italian
9. Scribes used to write on stone or paper made of ……..
a. wood b. papyrus c. metal d. glass
10. We must teach our children to ……..well.
a. say b. tell c. behave d. include
11. Egypt is an important ……in Africa.
a. city b. country c. continent d. village
12. In Egypt, the Nile ……..through the deserts of Africa.
a. joins b. controls c. flows d. starts
13. Cairo is the……..of Egypt.
a. capital b. ruler c. scribe d. village
14. The ……of our city is about 7 million people.
a. pollution b. size c. population d. area
15. The piano is my favorite musical ……..
a. instrument b. equipment c. machine d. tool

16. Alexandria is in the ……..of Egypt.

a. south b. middle c. center d. north

17. Egypt has a lot of ……folk music.

a. modern b. new c. traditional d. big

18. ……means traditional art, entertainment, food and music.

a. Picture b. Culture c. Agriculture d. Structure

19. People move their arms and feet to the ……..of music

a. sticks b. rhythm c. costumes d. dancers

20. There's an art……at the museum every year.

a. location b. tradition c. exhibition d. culture

Unit (4)

1 Cairo is a/an ……area with a population of 20 million people.
a. desert b. isolated c. small d. metropolitan

2. There are more than 20 million …….. in Greater Cairo.
a. inhabitants b. factories c. areas d. villages

3. There are a lot of cars in Cairo, so it's very ……
a. free b. traditional c. busy d. isolated

4. Cairo is a crowded city with many cars and a lot of …….
a. farms b. congestion c. villages

5. In cities, if you are a ……., you have to be careful about the traffic.
a. service b. school c. shop d. pedestrian

6. I live in a small village. It's …….. populated.
a. densely b. greatly c. widely d. sparsely

7. I live in an ……. village in the desert.
a. populated b. careful c. isolated d. close

8. In some countries it is …… for a bride to wear white.
a. urban b. isolated c. loud d. traditional

9. Our school is …… to my family's home, so I go on foot.
a. close b. open c. behind d. isolated

10. There are a lot of …… in our town such as shops, schools, workshops and restaurants.
a. inhabitants b. cars c. services d. areas

11. Villages are …… areas with few numbers of inhabitants.
a. urban b. rural c. populated d. busy

12. Cities and towns are ……. areas that are often densely populated.
a. isolated b. urban c. careful d. rural

13. My friend Hamza lives in a small ……. on the Nile.
a. village b. service c. school d. country

14. Dad is a/an …… He grows tomatoes, onions and potatoes
a. doctor b. farmer c. teacher d. engineer

15. My uncle is a carpenter. He works in a ……..
a. book shop b. shoe shop c. workshop d. flower shop

16. I like watching the beautiful Egyptian……swimming in the river.
a. deserts b. geese c. dates d. mountains

17. More than half of the world's ……. lives in cities.
a. station b. population c. congestion d. pollution
18. Yesterday, our team was ……. They scored a goal in the last minute.
a. unlucky b. busy c. kind d. lucky
19. A village is a rural ……...
a. environment b. metropolitan c. entertainment d. pedestrian
20. There are some natural …….. near some cities such as coal, aluminum or copper.
a. services b. resources c. villages d. workshops

Grammar

Present simple

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I …….. milk every morning. (drink – drinks)
2. He …… chicken once a week. (eat – eats)
3. We …….. football at the club. (play – plays)
4. She …….. lunch on Fridays. (cook – cooks)
5. They …….. to the cinema by car. (go – goes)
6. It …… a lot in winter. (rain – rains)
7. Lions …….. meat. (eat – eats)
8. A lion …….. fast. (run – runs)
9. My friend …….. in Cairo. (live – lives)
10. My friends …….. in Giza. (live – lives)
11. My friend and I …….. to school on foot. (go – goes)
12. Dad …….. in a bank. (work – works)
13. My parents …….. music. (like – likes)
14. She …….. a nurse. (is – are)
15. We …….. proud of our mother. (is – are)
16. I …….. like pasta. (don't – doesn't)
17. He …….. drink fizzy drinks. (don't – doesn't)
18. They …….. get up early on holidays. (don't – doesn't)
19. A lion …….. eat grass. (don't – doesn't)
20. My brother doesn't …….. tennis. (like – likes)
21. We don't …….. late. (sleep – sleeps)
22. My sister …….. tidies her room. (doesn't – never)
23. My brothers ……. play in the street. (doesn't – never)
24. …….. you go to school by bus? (Do – Does)
25. …….. she wash the dishes? (Do – Does)
26. …….. the earth go round the sun? (Do – Does)
27. ……your uncle work as a teacher? (Do – Does)
28. …….. she kind? (Does – Is)
29. Where …….. you from? (do – are)
30. I …….. a story before sleep. (read usually – usually read)

Present Continuous

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I (am – is – are) eating rice.
2. They (am – is – are) sleeping now.
3. We (am – is – are) swimming at present.
4. You (am – is – are) singing loudly.
5. He (am – is – are) running fast.
6. She (am – is – are) cooking at the moment.
7. It (am – is – are) flying high in the sky.
8. Omar (am – is – are) drinking tea.
9. Sama (am – is – are) drawing.
10. I (don't – am not) eating now.
11. They (don't – aren't) watching TV at the moment.
12. He (isn't – doesn't) washing the car now.
13. She (isn't – doesn't) cleaning the house now.
14. A bird (isn't – doesn't) flying at present.
15. Nada (isn't – doesn't) using her mobile.
16. My parents (don't – aren't) travelling today.
17. (Is – Does) he doing his homework?
18. (Does – Is) she sending emails?
19. Where (she is – is she) going now?
20. (Does – Is) the cat drinking milk ?
21. When are they (eat – eating) fish?
22. (Is – Does) Hana drawing?
23. What is he (do – doing)?

24. (Do – Are) you using the computer?

25. Why is she (cry – crying)?

26. (Do – Are) they watching TV?

27. Nada and Ola (is – are) painting their room.

28. (Do – Are) lions running?

29. Nada and I (am – are) watching cartoons.

30. Mom is cooking lunch (now – often).

31. Are you (drink – drinking) coffee?

32. Dad isn't (wash – washing) the car

33. Is Ali (walk – walking) to work?

34. Our (sons – son) are sleeping now.

Comparison

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ali is (tall – tallest).

2. Ali is (tall – taller) than Omar.

3. Ali is (taller – the tallest) player in our team.

4. Hana is (most beautiful – beautiful).

5. Hana is (more beautiful – most beautiful) than Nada.

6. Hana is (more beautiful – the most beautiful) girl in our class.

7. The Nile is the (longest – longer) river in the world.

8. Gold is (more expensive – the most expensive) than silver.

9. Chicken is (less expensive – most expensive) than meat.

10. Islam is (good – better) than Ramy at chess.

11. Islam is the (good – best) at chess.

12. Amir is (older – old) than Kamal.
13. Math is more (easy – difficult) than English.
14. English is (easier – difficult) than math.
15. Which is (fast – faster), a rabbit or a turtle?
16. Hams is good at drawing, but Shams is (better – best).
17. Water is the (less – least) expensive liquid. It's always free.
18. This is (the most – more) interesting film I've ever seen.
19. The African elephant is (the biggest – bigger) animal on land.
20. Mazin jupmed (higher – highest) than Maher.
21. Ahmed runs more (slow – quickly) than Tamer.
22. Ahmed runs the (more quickly – most quickly).
23. No player is better than Hamza. He is the (worst – best).
24. Zaki is the (worse – worst) singer I've ever heard.
25. I think football is (less – most) dangerous than boxing.

Adjectives & Adverbs

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Omar is a (slow – slowly) runner.
2. Omar runs (slow – slowly).
3. Dad is a (carefully – careful) driver.
4. Dad drives (careful – carefully).
5. My friends are (happy – happily).
6. My friends sing (happy – happily).
7. It rained (heavily – heavy).
8. Reem is a (well – good) swimmer.

9. Reem swims (good – well).

10. Hamza speaks English very (good – well).

11. Hamza is very (good – well) at speaking English.

12. My uncle works (hard – hardly).

13. Seif runs (slow – fast).

14. They play the drums (loud – loudly).

15. My sister reads books (quietly – quiet).

and & but

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Dina (and – but) Mona are friends.

2. I want this jacket, (but – and) I don't have enough money.

3. I like drawing (and – but) swimming

4. My friend didn't study hard, (and – but) he got high marks

5. Mom bought flour, eggs (but – and) butter.

6. Dad got up late, (and – but) he caught the bus.

7. Mohamed Salah is polite (and – but) hardworking.

8. Wael played well, (and – but) he lost the match.

9. We went to Aswan (and – but) visited the Elephantine Island

10. Heba is rich, (and – but) she is unhappy.

Possessive Pronouns

I	We	They	You	He	She	It
my	our	their	Your	His	her	Its
mine	ours	theirs	Yours	His	hers	___

1. This is my pen. It is (my – mine).
2. This is Dina's bag. It is (hers – her).
3. This is Omar's book. It is (his – him).
4. This is our car. It is (our – ours).
5. This is their house. It is (their – theirs).
6. This is your bike. It is (yours – your).
7. Look at that dog. Can you see (it – its) long tail?
8. That is (my – mine) pencil.
9. These are (ours – our) pencil cases.
10. Can you help your sister with (her – hers) homework?
11. These are my (cousins' – cousin's) shoes. They are theirs.
12. That is the (teachers – teachers') room
13. (Who – Whose) car is that?
14. Aylin goes to a (girls' – girl's) school.
15. It is my sister's cat. It is (hers – theirs).

Past Simple

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We (play – played) fooball yesterday.
2. I (went – go) to Giza last week.
3. They (watch – watched) TV last night.
4. Mona (cleaned – clean) the house yesterday.
5. He (buys – bought) a car a year ago.
6. My sister (cooks – cooked) lunch last Friday.
7. It (rains – rained) yesterday.
8. My parents (clean – cleaned) the house last month.
9. Hamza (visited – visits) his uncle yesterday.
10. Omar and Salma (get – got) married in 2005.
11. I (am – was) at the club yesterday.
12. I (went – was) to the club yesterday.
13. They (are – were) happy at the party last night.
14. They (was – felt) happy at the party last night.
15. Karim (didn't – doesn't) play tennis last week.
16. Samy (doesn't – didn't) take photos yesterday.
17. They (didn't – don't) go to the cinema last Monday.
18. She (doesn't – didn't) make the bed an hour ago.
19. We didn't (go – went) to Cairo yesterday.
20. I didn't (wears – wear) a jacket last night.
21. (Do – Did) you play chess an hour ago?
22. (Did – Do) they go to Alexandria last summer?
23. (Does – Did) she buy a dress last week?
24. (Are – Did) they eat pizza yesterday?

25. (Did – Were) you ready for the test yesterday?

26. (Did – Was) your father at home an hour ago?

27. Did you (go – went) shopping yesterday?

28. When (does – did) they travel to Aswan?

29. When (were – did) they in Aswan?

30. We played tennis (now – yesterday).

31. They were at the park (last week – next week).

32. Dad left home ten minutes (ago – every).

Conjunctions

1. I think the bright colors are the most beautiful ones …….. some people prefer dark colors.
 a. so that b. after c. before d. although
2. …… I look at this carpet, I remember how much work and skill it takes to make it.
 a. Every time b. So that c. Although d. Before
3. We should wash our hands …… we eat our meals.
 a. while b. before c. although d. even though
4. …… he's 24 now, he's still like a little child.
 a. Every time b. After c. Before d. Even though
5. I'll call you …….. I get home.
 a. so that b. as soon as c. while d. every time
6. I study hard …… I can get high marks.
 a. so that b. although c. after d. while
7. He couldn't eat …… he was hungry.
 a. so that b. although c. after d. while
8. …….. I go to school, I learn something new.
 a. So that b. Although c. Every time d. While
9. Students stand up …… the teacher enters the class.
 a. even though b. so that c. every time d. although
10. We have lunch …… my dad comes from work.
 a. as soon as b. even though c. while d. so that

11. …….. they played very well, they lost the game.
a. Although b. Every time c. As soon d. So that
12. I always do my homework …… I sleep.
a. as soon as b. after c. even though d. before
13. It started to rain…… the sun was shining.
a. so that b. even though c. every time d. as soon as
14. ……. my dad takes us to the park, he buys ice cream for us.
a. So that b.While c. Even though d. Every time
15. She lost her ring ……she was cleaning the lounge.
a. so that b. even though c. every time d. while

Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. senses - **Our** - important – very – are.

.....

2. tongue - you - food - taste - **Your** - helps

.....

3. kind - **What** - do – food – of – enjoy – you?

.....

4. held - is - paralympics - four - every - **The** – years.

.....

5. wants - tidy - **Mom** - to – us – lounge - the.

.....

6. cousin - champion - is - swimming - **My** – a

.....

7. an - routine - **Starting** - is – exercise – hard.

.....

8. a long - **Egypt** - history – with – a country – is.

.....

9. 27 - in - governorates - **There** - today – are - Egypt.

.....

10. Egypt - **Music** – ancient – for – important – was

.....

11. village - than - a - bigger - **A** – is – city.

.....

12. and - instruments - **Violins** - string – are – guitars.

.....

13. don’t - Invertebrates - a – have – backbone.

.....

14. arachnids - eight - have - legs - All.

.....

15. are - Some – colored – brightly – fish

.....

16. bright - insects - attract - colors - The.

.....

17. fur - have - Mammals - or – hair – their – on - bodies

.....

Question Bank

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :

(1) The …… is part of the digestive system.

a) lung b) heart c) stomach d) nose

(2) We have two ……..

a) stomach b) stomachs c) hearts d) lungs

(3) Braille helps ……. people to read.

a) stupid b) blind c) dumb d) deaf

(4) People who can't hear or speak use……language.

a) sign b) signal c) English d) sing

(5) We ……. with our skin.

a) see b) feel c) taste d) smell

(6) Our ……controls how we move.

a) lungs b) liver c) heart d) brain

(7) The brain has three ……. areas.

a) main b) mean c) moon d) man

(8) I want to do something ……..and unusual.

a) sad b) old c) bad d) creative

(9) He's very sad. He's ……..

a) disappointed b) glad c) delighted d) happy

(10) We have to …… the lounge.

a) study b) tidy c) chew d) breathe

(11) The cerebrum controls our five ……..

a) senses b) movements c) plays d) lungs

(12) Our heart ……..the blood around our body.

a) protects b) pumps c) lifts d) chews

(13) When we ……..food, it goes to our stomach.

a) chew b) drink c) breathe d) swallow

(14) Dogs have a very good sense of ……..

a) seeing b) smell c) touch d) hearing

(15) Aya Ayman Abbas is the ……..female Egyptian Paralympic swimmer.

a) last b) first c) second d) third

(16) Our senses are working all the time and they take in a lot of …… .

a) combinations b) communication

c) languages d) information

(17) We breathe ……. air through our nose.

a) at b) on c) in d) off

(18) Amphibians can live on land and on……..

a) air b) water

c) gas d) underground

(19) ……..feed their babies with milk.

a) Birds b) Fish c) Mammals d) Insects

(20) Bats can ……..

a) sing b) dance c) fly d) speak

(21) Reptiles spend sometimes in the….to keep warm.

a) water b) sun c) skin d) feathers

(22) Birds have ……..

a) fur b) skin c) feathers d) water

(23) Humans, bats and whales are all ……..

a) reptiles b) mammals c) amphibians d) animals

(24) Adding ……..to a color makes it darker.

a) white b) black c) brown d) blue

(25) Spiders have 8 legs and are called ……...

a) arachnids b) insects c) vertebrates d) reptiles

(26) Scientists think that there are nearly 400,000 different ……. of plants.

a) shades b) types c) colors d) examples

(27) ……..can fly very fast.

a) Crabs b) Dragonflies

c) Spiders d) Grasshoppers

(28) ……..have hard shells and move very slowly.

a) Squid b) Snails c) Horses d) Octopus

(29) Amphibians need water or a ……habitat to survive.

a) dry b) hot c) hard d) moist

(30) It is good to …….. people.

a) help b) laugh at c) hate d) criticize

(31) We are always ……and helpful at school.

a) crazy b) mad c) polite d) noisy

(32) We grow crops in the …….

a) factory b) city c) air d) village

(33) The ……..is hot today.

a) climate b) space c) weather d) sky

(34) Lower Egypt was in the ……..

a) north b) south c) east d) west

(35) Egypt is a ……..with a very long and interesting history.

a) street b) country c) city d) village

(36) Citizenship is behaving in a way that helps your …..

a) school b) family c) society d) friends

(37) I don't drop ……..in the street or the park.

a) books b) food c) friends d) trash

(38) Hieroglyphs are ……..and symbols that can mean one word or many ideas.

a) photos b) numbers c) letters d) pictures

(39) Upper Egypt was in the …….

a) east b) west c) north d) south

(40) Cairo is a …… area.

a) rural b) desert c) metropolitan d) countryside

(41) ……..walk on pavement.

a) Pedestrians b) Bikes c) Vehicles d) Cars

(42) A place where there are no services is ……..

a) polluted b) populated c) isolated d) urban

(43) Farmers live in …….

a) cities b) villages c) barns d) factories

(44) We get wool from …….

a) cows b) donkeys c) geese d) sheep

(45) The ……..are playing in the garden.

a) children b) child c) boy d) girl

(46) The ……..is the structure of the carpet.

a) warp b) dye c) loom d) spin

(47) The ……..is collected from the sheep.

a) cotton b) yarn c) wool d) carpet

(48) Solar energy is turned into ……energy.

a) electricity b) mechanical c) tidal d) electrical

(49) ……..resources can be replaced when they run out.

a) Renewable b) Non-renewable c) Nature d) Metal

(50) …….. is made from petroleum.

a) Wood b) Plastic c) Stone d) Soil

(51) We can't make solar power on ……days.

a) funny b) sunny c) rainy d) hot

(52) It's very expensive to travel by …….

a) road b) water c) pipe d) air

(53) Coral reefs have a ……..exoskeleton.

a) soft b) smooth c) hard d) slim

(54) Our skeleton ……..our organs.

a) protect b) harm c) protects d) protecting

(55) ……..people can't hear.

a) Dumb b) Deaf c) Kind d) Blind

(56) ……..are cold-blooded.

a) Birds b) Mammals c) Reptiles d) Humans

(57) Having right colors can help fish……from predators.

a) find b) hide c) eat d) ride

(58) The population of my …… is 500 people.

a) city b) country c) village d) town

(59) My children always ……..cartoons in the evening.

a) watches b) is watching c) watching d) watched

(60) You can see …….. on the river.

a) trains b) ferries c) buses d) cars

(61) Muscles are attached to our ……..

a) heart b) stomach c) bones d) hair

(62) ……..is a renewable resource.

a) Metal b) Petroleum c) Wind d) Oil

(63) They ……..hieroglyphs and hieratic scripts in the past.

a) studied b) study c) studies d) to study

(64) We can ……..with our tongue.

a) see b) touch c) taste d) smell

(65) Braille is a ……..the blind people use to read.

a) code b) food c) nerve d) sense

(66) There are ……different types of vertebrates.

a) one b) two c) three d) five

(67) Mai looked ……..because she didn't get good marks.

a) creative b) happy

c) disappointed d) cheerful

(68) ……..are warm-blooded.

a) Mammals b) Reptiles

c) Amphibians d) Invertebrates

(69) Our senses take ……..a lot of information.

a) off b) in c) out d) down

(70) The ……..hemisphere is for solving problems.

a) right b) left c) middle d) third

(71) Our ……..pumps blood around the body.

a) bones b) muscle c) stomach d) heart

(72) Mammals ……eggs.

a) lay b) don't lay c) give d) make

(73) ……. make us strong and protect our organs.

a) Bones b) Lungs c) Blood d) Mouth

(74) We use our nose in the ……. sense.

a) smell b) taste c) touch d) hear

(75) ……people can use Braille to read books.

a) Deaf b) Blind c) Angry d) Poor

(76) The …….games is an international competition.

a) Paralympics b) Olympic c) Read d) Feel

(77) Ants are small……they are extremely strong.

a) and b) with c) so d) but

(78) Fish have fins and ……..

a) fur b) soil c) gills d) legs

(79) We use our tongue in the …….sense.

a) touch b) smell c) taste d) hear

(80) We use our fingers in the …….sense.

a) sight b) touch c) hearing d) smell

(81) Our heart pumps blood around our ……..

a) skeleton b) bones c) body d) nails

(82) Drawing and painting are ……..activities.

a) mental b) physical c) natural d) sports

(83) To lead a healthy life, we need a mixture of physical and ……..activities.

a) body b) mental c) sports d) local

(84) An ……. has eight legs. It lives in the sea.

a) squid b) octopus c) crab d) fish

(85) The biggest bird in the world …….fly.

a) can b) can't c) are d) is

(86) Fish use their ……to move.

a) arms b) gills c) legs d) fins

Grammar

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :

(1) Hamza ……. TV in the evening.

a) watch b) watches

c) watching d) are watching

(2) We ……. eat junk food.

a) doesn't b) don't c) isn't d) haven't

(3) We ……handball in the club every Sunday.

a) plays b) playing c) play d) played

(4) My mother ……. like going out.

a) isn't b) don't c) doesn't d) can't

(5) ……..speaks English well.

a) We b) You c) She d) I

(6) I ……. basketball on Sundays.

a) plays b) played c) playing d) play

(7) Dalia doesn't often ……the paper at this time.

a) to read b) reads c) reading d) read

(8) Cairo is the ……. city in Egypt.

a) big b) small c) biggest d) smallest

(9) No one is taller than Hany. He is ……..

a) the tallest b) as tall as

c) short d) the shortest

(10) Our school is the ……. in the area.

a) old b) new c) older d) oldest

(11) Ali is more skillful ……. Samy.

a) than b) that c) as d) so

(12) My mother cooks ……..than anyone.

a) good b) best c) well d) better

(13) Ostriches are ……. than horses.

a) fast b) faster c) the fastest d) fast

(14) The blue whale is …….than the whale shark.

a) biggest b) the biggest c) bigger d) big

(15) This is my neighborhood. It's …….

a) his b) hers c) yours d) mine

(16) These are Nada's books. They're …….

a) hers b) mine c) his d) theirs

(17) I found …….book in the bag.

a) me b) mine c) my d) you

(18) This is her kite and where's …….?

a) your b) yours c) my d) you

(19) Don't take that bag. It's ……..

a) hers b) her c) she d) him

(20) Scribes ……. for the ruling dynasties in ancient Egypt.

a) work b) working c) works d) worked

(21) Ancient Egyptians …….ink from brightly colored minerals.

a) make b) makes c) making d) made

(22) ……..he is poor, he is happy.

a) But b) After c) Although d) Before

(23) I have my breakfast ……I get up.

a) so that b) although c) before d) after

(24) I help my mother ……. she asks.

a) but b) as soon as c) so that d) although

(25) He is unhappy ……. he is rich.

a) because b) so that c) although d) while

(26) I finished my homework ……I was tired and had a headache.

a) before b) while

c) every time d) even though

(27) Hana ran upstairs to see her little sister …….she got home.

a) as soon as b) although c) so that d) before

(28) In 2050, all buildings will ……. solar panels on their roofs.

a) had b) has c) have d) having

(29) We …….to the USA next month.

a) go b) went c) goes d) will go

(30) We ……..in the sea next week.

a) swam b) will swim c) swim d) swimming

(31) People ……..by electrical train in the next few years.

a) travel b) will travel c) traveled d) travels

(32) He ……..on the computer next Thursday.

a) plays b) will play c) play d) played

(33) Omar and Adam ……..play football on Sundays.

a) doesn't b) hasn't c) don't d) didn't

(34) Today ……Friday, so we don't go to school.

a) am b) is c) are d) do

(35) That is your bike. It's ……..

a) your b) mine c) my d) yours

(36) All arachnids …….. eight legs.

a) has b) are c) is d) have

(37) Zookeepers …….. animals.

a) love b) loves c) eat d) helps

(38) Elephants are ……..biggest animals in the world.

a) as b) than c) the d) a

(39) This is our school. It's …….

a) his b) ours c) mine d) his

(40) Snails are ……..than frogs.

a) slow b) slower c) slowly d) slowest

(41) You have to cook the egg ……..…..you eat it.

a) after b) when c) before d) while

(42) Octopuses can swim ……..than chameleons.

a) worse b) good c) best d) better

(43) She wants to buy a carpet……she can use it in her bedroom.

a) so that b) but c) while d) although

(44) There ……..two hemispheres in our brain.

a) am b) is c) are d) has

(45) Leopards are ……..than elephants.

a) fast b) fastest c) faster d) the fastest

(46) We ……..to a new flat ten years ago.

a) moved b) move c) moves d) moving

(47) Mena ……..the north and south to form Egypt.

a) divided b) moved c) united d) planted

(48) Leopards are ……..than cheetahs.

a) large b) largest c) larger d) big

(49) ……..I went to the club, I met my friends there.

a) So b) After c) Before d) While

(50) People ….living near the Nile about 9000 years ago.

a) start b) started c) starting d) starts

(51) Robots ……..airplanes in the future.

a) will fly b) fly c) flying d) flies

(52) Adam ……..10 years old.

a) am b) is c) are d) have

(53) ……..you go to school on Fridays?

a) Do b) Does c) Is d) Has

(54) He ……..two sisters and a brother.

a) have b) am c) are d) has

(55) ……..bottle over there is empty.

a) Those b) These c) That d) It

(56) Those kids ……..playing in the garden.

a) do b) are c) is d) have

(57) ……..are my pencils.

a) The b) These c) This d) That

(58) My father bought ……..toys for me.

a) that b) those c) this d) than

Our senses

We have five senses. We use these senses every day. We use our senses to understand the world around us. We use our eyes to see. We use our nose to smell. We use our ears to hear. We use our tongue to taste. We use our skin to feel. Our senses are working all the time. They take in a lot of information.

Digestive system

We use our digestive system when we eat and drink. We chew and swallow food, then it goes to our stomach. In the stomach, a special liquid changes the food into energy and nutrients that we need in our bodies.

Respiratory system

We use our respiratory system when we breathe. We breathe in air through our nose, and it goes to our lungs. In the lungs, the oxygen in the air is passed to the blood. Our heart pumps this blood around our body.

Bones and muscles

Our skeleton is made up of all the bones in our body. These make us strong and protect our organs. Muscles are attached to our bones, and they lift and turn bones to make us move.

The activities of summer camps

To lead a healthy life, we need a mixture of physical and mental activities. Physical activity is good for your body. It makes our muscles strong and helps us use up the calories we get from food. Mental activities are good for our brain. When you draw, paint, write or play on instrument, you really focus on the creative activity, so you relax.

A good diet / Healthy food

We all need to eat a good diet to stay healthy. But what is a good diet? A good diet includes lots of fresh food and plenty of water to drink. We should eat fresh fruit and vegetables because they have lots of fiber and are full of vitamins and minerals. We should eat plenty of protein too, as this helps us grow. Foods with protein include fish, cheese, eggs, beans, nuts, and meat. Carbohydrates like bread, rice and pasta give us energy. Sugar also gives us energy, but too much sugar isn't good for us. Eat a good diet with lots of different fresh food, and you'll be healthy.

Invertebrates

Invertebrates live on land and in water. They are cold blooded. Some invertebrates can swim very well such as the octopus. Some invertebrates such as crabs have a hard shell for protection. Snails are invertebrates that have hard shell and move very slowly. The dragonfly can fly very fast. Insects are invertebrates, too. Grasshoppers are the most amazing insects. They can jump more than a meter

Mammals

Mammals have hair or fur on their bodies. They are warm-blooded. They feed their babies with milk and most of them give birth to their babies. They don't lay eggs. Humans are mammals. Most mammals live on land, but some live in the sea, such as whales and seals. Bats are the only mammals that can fly.

Reptiles

Reptiles are cold-blooded. This means that they have to spend time in the sun to keep warm. Most reptiles have four legs, except snakes who don't have any. They don't have hair or fur. They have scales. In addition, all reptiles lay eggs. Most reptiles live on land. Some can live in rivers or the sea, such as turtles, but they come on to land to lay their eggs.

The history of Egypt

Egypt is a country with a very long and interesting history. There were two separate areas. Lower Egypt was in the north, where the Nile joins the sea. Upper Egypt was in the south, where the Nile flows through Africa. One pharaoh, Mena joined these two parts to unite the country of Egypt. Egypt controlled the Nile, so it became very powerful.

Folk music

Egypt has lots of traditional folk music. Folk musicians from Upper Egypt play Saidi music. This type of music uses string instruments such as the oboe. Singing and drumming is a key part, too. South of Egypt is the home of Nubian music. Clapping and drumming is an important part of this type of music. It is now popular all over Egypt

Best of luck

Royal International Language Schools **Name:……..**
Class:……

Primary Four
English A. L Revision. Sheet
(Connect Plus)

A. Listening

1-Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, d :

1. Fish take oxygen through their ……

a. lungs b. fins c. stem d. gills

2. Fish have ……on their bodies.

a. fur b. scales c. feather d. hair

3. Fresh water and salt water are……..

a. holes b. habits c. habitats d. hobbies

4. Fish have ……to move.

a. gills b. fins c. tails d. scales

2-Listen and complete :

1. The biggest animal on ……..is a mammal.

2. The biggest animal in the world is the ……whale.

3. The whale shark is the biggest……in the world.

4. The whale shark is about ……meters long.

A. Listening

1-Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, d :

1. Ancient Egyptians used ……to write down everything that happened.

a. clerks b. teachers c. scribes d. scientists

2. Scribes wrote in ……..language.

a. Farsi b. hieroglyphs c. Latin d. Arabic

3. Children learnt to become a scribe at …….

a. homes b. tombs c. museums d. schools

4. Scribes used paper made from …….for writing.

a. acacia b. tamarisk c. papyrus reeds d. lettuce

2-Listen and complete :

1. Folk musicians from…….Egypt play Saidi music.

2. Saidi music uses string instruments such as……

3. Farther…….is the home of Nubian music.

4. The most popular instrument in …….music are the shabbaba and the rebaba.

B. Reading

1-Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

Governorate – arms – Where – country

Adel: Hello, Maged! Where do you live?

Maged: Hi, Adel, I live in Upper Egypt.

Adel: (1)…….. is Upper Egypt?

Maged: It's in the south.

Adel: What (2)……..do you live in?

Maged: I live in Aswan.

Adel: Great! What about Nubian dancing?

Maged: It's lovely and colorful. We move our (3) ……..and feet to the rhyme of the music.

2-Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

Land - writing - bee humming bird - ostrich

Hala: What are you doing, Mona?

Mona: I'm (1)…….an English paragraph.

Hala: What is it about ?

Mona: It's about animals and birds.

Hala: What is the biggest animal on (2)……..?

Mona: The biggest animal on land is the African elephant.

Hala: What is the smallest bird?

Mona: It's the bee (3)……..

3- Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

Family – have – park - sleep

Sara: What did you do last Friday?

Noura: I went to the (1)……

Sara: Who did you go with?

Noura: I went with my (2)……..

Sara: Did you (3)…….. a nice time there?

4-Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

Eyes- heart – hear - five

Toka: How many senses do we have?

Nour: We have (1)…….senses.

Toka: How can we (2)…..?

Nour: We hear with our ears.

Toka: How can we see?

Nour: We can see with our (3)……..

5-Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

Mammals – zoo – animals- elephants

Hassan: Where did you go yesterday?

Omar: I went to the (1)……

Hassan: What did you see there?

Omar: I saw the (2) ……

Hassan: Which animal did you like?

Omar: I liked the (3)……and the monkeys.

Hassan: Are the monkeys (4)……?

Omar: Yes, they are. They give birth.

6-Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

mammals – horse – backbone - vertebrate

Khaled: What's your favorite animal?

Waleed: I like the (1)……....

Khaled: Is it a vertebrate or an invertebrate?

Waleed: It's a (2)……..

Khaled: Why?

Waleed: Because it has a (3)…….

Khaled: What type of vertebrates is it?

Waleed: It's a (4)……

Comprehension

1- Read the passage then answer the questions:

Mammals have hair or fur on their bodies .They are warm -blooded .They feed their babies with milk and most of them give birth to their babies. They don't lay eggs. Humans are mammals. Most of them live on land ,but some live in the sea, such as whales and seals . Bats are the only mammals that can fly.

A) Choose the correct answer

1-Mammals have hair or……

a)beaks b)fins c)fur

2-Whales and seals are……..

a)reptiles b)mammals c)amphibians

B) Answer the following questions

1)Where do most mammals live?

……..

2)What are the only mammals that can fly?

……..

C) Complete the following questions

1-Mammals are……blooded

2-Mammals feed the babies with……

3-……..and…….live in the sea

2- Read the passage then answer the questions:

There are lots of interesting things to see under the sea . Predators hunt and eat other animals. Preys are caught and eaten. Some fish are very brightly colored and so are some plants in the coral reef, having bright colors can help fish to hide from predators. The coral is very bright and has different colors so the fish can hide from bigger fish. In addition, many predators don't eat prays that are brightly colored. Bright colors can be warning that the animal is poisonous.

A) Choose the correct answer

1-…….hunt and eat other animals.

a) Preys b)Predators c)Fish

2-Some fish hide in the……..

a) holes b) burrows c) coral reef

B) Answer the following questions

1-Are the coral reefs brightly colored?

……

2-Where can we see the coral reef?

……

3-Choose the correct answer:

1-…… the only mammal s that can fly.

a-Whales b- Seals c-Bats

2-……..have backbone.

a-Invertebrate b-vertebrates c-Arachnids

3-We breathe through our…….

a-ears b-eyes c-lungs

4-A giraffe is the……..animals in the world.

a-tall b-taller c-tallest

5-The turtle walks……..

a-slowly b- quick c- quickly

6-The animal that hunts and eats other animals we call it a……

a-prey b- predator c-mammals

7-Red, yellow and blue are……colors.

a-secondary b- mixing c-primary

8-The elephant is……..than the goat.

a-heavy b- heaviest c-heavier

9-Mammals are…….blooded.

a-cold b- warm c- light

10- The……the only reptile that don't have legs.

a-whale b- seal c- snakes

11-We use our digestive system when we eat and…….

a-sleep b- see c-drink

12-We use our eyes to……..

a-hear b- see c-smell

13-The Paralympics games takes place every ……years.

a-two b-six c-four

14-Fish take in oxygen through their……..

a-nose b-fins c- gills

15-Birds have…….which made of bones.

a-wings b- feathers c-beaks

16-I'm a bird but I can't fly .I'm a/an…….

a-ostrich b- whale c-fish

17-Yesterday, I ……..to the cinema.

a-go b- goes c- went

18- Deaf can't……

a-hear b- eat c-see

19- Blind can't,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,

a-see b- play c- hear

20- Adding black to a color makes it……

a-lighter b-darker c-mix

21-Crabs have a hard shell for…….

a-movement b – food c – protection.

22-Mona said …… "I don't want to go to the park."

a-sadly b-sad c-sadily

23-The African elephant is …… animal on land.

a-The big b- the bigger c-the biggest

24-They…….walk to school.

a-don't b-aren't c-doesn't

25-Who is the ……..boy in the class?

a-Fast b- faster c- fastest

26-A……is a group of people who live and work together in the same area.

a-school b- work c- community

27-These are Adam's shoes . They're……

a-Theirs b-his c-hers

28-Birds have…….on their bodies.

a-beaks b-feathers c-eyes

29-Our …….pumps blood around our body.

a-heart b- oxygen c-blood

30- Our …….controls how we move.

a-brain b-eat c- move

The Reader " Khayameya Summer"

A) Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1- Grandpa wasn't one of the Tent Markers. ……

2- Grandpa likes sewing lotus flowers patterns. ……

3- Zeinab likes to help her grandpa. …….

4- Zeinab doesn't want to visit her grandparents. ……

5- Grandpa wanted to be a doctor when he was young. ……

6- Grandpa makes the patterns with five layers of cotton. ……

7- Lots of people wanted to learn at Khayameya School. ……..

8- Grandpa can see well to sew now. ……

9- Grandpa designs and measures the patterns. ……

B-Choose the correct answer from a, b, c:

1- …… can teach Zeinab how to sew.

a. Grandpa b. Father c. Mother

2- Grandpa makes everything by his …….

a. computer b. hand c. tools

3- Grandpa changed his …… of being an engineer or a teacher.

a. house b. mind c. time

4- Zeinab's grandparents were very …… to see her.

a. angry b. pleased c. tired

5- Zeinab has …… friends.

a. sad b. clever c. unhappy

6- Khayameya School is traveling all ……

a. summer b. winter c. spring

7- Grandpa likes sewing …… flowers best.

a. sunflower b. red c. daisy

8- Grandpa was one of the best …… in Khayameya Street.

a. vets b. doctors c. artisans

Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1- have – gazelles – **Rhim** – horns – long.

……

2- perfect – **Camels** – for – are – desert – the.

……

3- move – the – **Seeds** – wind – can – in.

……

4- eat – does – **What** – fox – the – fennec?

……

5- sunlight – **Plants** – and water – need.

……

6- food – chew – with – **We** – teeth – our.

……

7- waste – intestine – **The large** – removes.

……

How to write an e-mail:

Dear Mona,

How are you? I hope you are fine.

……
……
……
……
……
……
……
……
……
……

See you soon.

Janevar

Note:

Mind the tense you are using.

Write an e – mail to your friend about where did you go last weekend?

Your name is Ali and your friend's name is Adel

…….

……

……

……

……

……

……

……

……

……

……

……

……

……

……

……

……

……

……..

…….

Write a text of fifty (50) words using the following guiding words:

Advantages and Disadvantages of having a pet

Bring happiness – take care of – good friends – cost money

Cats and dogs are good pets. Pets would bring happiness to our life. In addition, we will be kind and helpful by taking care of them. They are good friends. However, they cost a lot of money. They can make the house untidy. They can be noisy and it takes time to take care of them.

Healthy and Unhealthy Food

Drink water – vegetables- meals – fiber – vitamins – chicken- candies

I like healthy food. I drink a lot of water every day. I always eat vegetables and fruits that have a lot of fiber and vitamins like mangoes, bananas, and potatoes. Mom cooks healthy meals. She cooks chicken and rice for lunch. I do not drink cola. I don't eat lots of candies and sweets because they are unhealthy.

Write an email of fifty words about your visit to Alexandria

Dear Sarah,

How is your family? I want to tell you about my visit to Alexandria. Last Friday, we went to Alexandria by train. We stayed at a hotel. The hotel was near the beach. We went to the beach at 2 p.m. We had a nice time in Alexandria.

Yours,

Aya

After the summer, Zeinab writes an email to her grandfather. Complete her email. Remember to say:

- **what you enjoyed**
- **what you learned**
- **what you want to do in the next holiday**

Hi Grandpa,
Thank you for a wonderful summer holiday! I enjoyed my learning about sewing, different colors and the art that you make. I learned that we make the patterns with three layers of cotton. In the next holiday, I want to travel all the summer with the Khayameya School.
See you soon.
Zeinab

Grammar on Unit 1

Present simple المضارع البسيط

1. التكوين هو التصريف الأول للفعل وله شكلان:

الشكل الأول: الفعل بدون إضافات (المصدر بدون to)

مع (I / you / we / they / الاسم الجمع)

والشكل الثاني: بإضافة (s / es / ies)

إذا كان الفاعل (He / she / it / اسم مفرد) مثل:

I, You, We, they اسم جمع	eat / run / walk / sing
He, She, It اسم مفرد	eats / runs / walks / sings

انظر إلي الصور التالية وادرس الأمثلة أسفل الصور:



Kareem always does drawing!



Adam goes to the park every week.

كيف نضيف (s/ es / ies) الي نهاية الفعل؟

1) إذا انتهى الفعل بـ (x /o / ss / ch / sh / ss / z) نضيف للفعل es:

I, You, We, they اسم جمع	wash / watch
He, She, It اسم مفرد	washes / watches

I wash my car. He washes his car.

2) إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف y مسبوق بحرف ساكن تحذف ونضيف ies:

I, You, We, they اسم جمع	cry / try
He, She, It اسم مفرد	cries / tries

I try to help him. She tries to help him.

3. إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف y مسبوق بحرف متحرك (a / e/ i / o/ u) نضيف s فقط:

I, You, We اسم جمع → enjoy / play / pray

He, She, It اسم مفرد → enjoys / plays / prays

4. باقي نهايات الأفعال نضيف s فقط

I, You, We اسم جمع → cook / start / find

He, She, It اسم مفرد → cooks / starts / finds

I cook lunch. She cooks lunch.

2 الاستخدام:

1. يعبر عن الحقائق الدائمة وشبه الدائمة
 - He works in a hospital.
2. يعبر عن العادات
 - I always get up at six o'clock.
3. يعبر عن الأحداث المتكررة
 - I go to school every day.

3. الكلمات الدالة عليه:

ا) المجموعة الأولي:

usually عادة	often غالبا	sometimes أحيانا
always دائما	never أبدا / لا	

هذه الظروف تسمي ظروف التكرار وغالبا تأتي بعد الفاعل أو بعد فعل يكون :

- I usually study my lessons.
- I am usually late.

ب. المجموعة الثانية:

in (winter/ summer) في (موسم)	from time to time من حين لآخر
on يوم (Friday / Saturday) في (يوم)	as usual كالمعتاد
every / each (day / week ..) كل (يوم / أسبوع ..)	Once / twice.. a day / week .. مرة /مرتين ..في اليوم/ الأسبوع

هذه الظروف تأتي غالبا في بداية أو نهاية الجملة:

- I visit my friend from time to time.
- It rains in winter.

4) النفي :

He / She / It	الاسم المفرد	doesn't	لا	التكملة + مصدر الفعل +
I / you We / They	الاسم الجمع	don't	لا	

Examples:

- He likes eating fruit.
- He doesn't like eating fruit.
- They plant trees.
- They don't plant trees.

5) السؤال بهل

Does	هل	+ he / she / it	اسم مفرد	? مصدر الفعل +
Do	هل	+ I / you / we / they	الاسم الجمع	

She drinks coffee. — Does she drink coffee?

- Yes, she does. // No, she doesn't.

They plant trees. — Do they plant trees?

- Yes, they do // No, they don't.

6) السؤال بأداة استفهام

أداة الاستفهام			مصدر الفعل	? التكملة
	does	he / she / it الاسم المفرد		
	do	I / you / we / they الاسم الجمع		

Where does he play football? — What do they plant?

Note the following: Verb to be

نستخدمه كفعل أساسي في المضارع كما يلي:

الاثبات		النفي		السؤال بهل	
I am = I'm	أنا أكون	I am not	أنا لا أكون	Am I ...?	هل أنا ؟
He is = He 's	هو يكون	He isn't	هو لا يكون	Is he ..?	هل هو ؟
She is = She's	هي تكون	she isn't	هي لا تكون	Is she ..?	هل هي ؟
It is = It's	هو / هي لغير العاقل	It isn't	هو لا يكون/ هي لا تكون	Is it..?	هل هو / هي ؟
You are = You 're	أنت تكون/ انتم تكونون	You aren't	أنت لا تكون	Are you..?	هل أنت ؟
We are = We're	نحن نكون	we aren't	نحن لا نكون	Are we..?	هل نحن ؟
They are = They're	هم يكونون / هن يكن	they aren't	هم لا يكونون	Are they..?	هل هم ؟

He is Ahmed. — He isn't Ahmed. — Is he Ahmed?

They are busy. — They aren't busy. — Are they busy?



Activities
On Grammar

1. Underline the correct words in brackets. (Structure)

1. My aunt (am - is - are) a doctor.
2. Nada (work - working - works) in a shop.
3. Nawal (always – never - rarely) studies hard.
4. Ahmed (speak - speaking - speaks) French.
5. I (don't - am not – doesn't) play tennis.
6. He (doesn't - don't – isn't) like milk.
7. Sanaa doesn't (watch - watches - watched) TV.
8. She (does – is – has) late for school.
9. Sayed always (read - reads - reading) newspapers.
10. (Is – Do – Does) he wash his car every day?

2. Rearrange.

1. I love burgers. (He)

.....

2. I go to cinema as usual. (usually)

.....

3. He is my best friend. (They)

.....

4. Nada never washes the dishes. (doesn't)

.....

5. I go to club from time to time. (sometimes)

.....

2. Correct the mistakes.

1. I studies my lessons every day.

.....

2. He wash his car every month.

.....

3. I doesn't like my bag.

.....

Activities
On Unit 1

1. Underline the correct words in brackets.

1. When we eat we chew and (swallow – leave – change) our food.
2. I (am – is – are) a student in a primary school.
3. A liquid changes the food in our (lung – stomach – heart) into energy and nutrients.
4. We breathe air through our nose into our (hearts - lungs - intestines).
5. I (working - work - works) at a bank.
6. The oxygen in our lungs is passed to the (muscle – blood – stomach)
7. She (live - lives - living) with her parents.
8. Cows (feeds - feed - feeding) on grass.

2. Rearrange.

1. Ali - dish - **Umm** - my - is - Egyptian - favorite.

2. are - well- who - **People** – can't - hear - deaf.

3. prefers - **Mr** - music – Arabic – Gamal.

3. Supply the missing parts the following dialogue.

Eyad : Which hemisphere of the brain controls the right side of the brain?

Maged:

Eyad : Are most people right handed or left handed?

Maged:

Eyad :?

Maged: I am right handed.



4. Read the following passage and answer the questions.

We need fats for a healthy nervous system and these include nuts, oily fish. oil and butter. Carbohydrates like bread, rice, and pasta give us energy. Sugar also gives us energy, but too much sugar isn't good for us. Sugar is in cakes, cookies, and candy, so try not to have too much of these. Eat a good diet with lots of different fresh food, and you'll be healthy.

A. Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False).

1. Sugar gives us energy (……)
2. Too much sugar is good for health. (……)
3. Fresh food helps us to be healthy. (……)

B. Answer the following questions:

4. Why do we need fats?

……

5. In which food can we find sugar?

……

5. Look and write.



got – gold medal

……



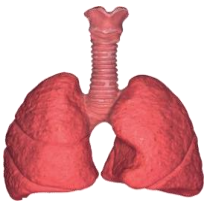
listen - music

……



chew - food

……



have - lungs

……

6. Write a paragraph of four sentences on.

"Digestive system"

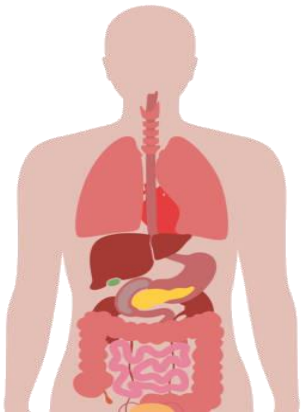
Questions to help you:

- What does our digestive system do?
- Where do we put food?
- How do we chew food?
- What does a special liquid do?

.....

.....

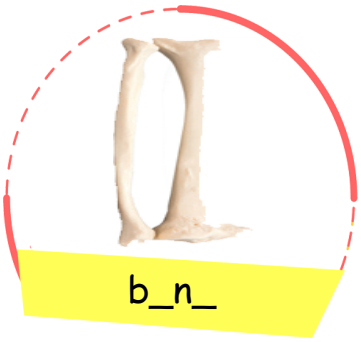
.....



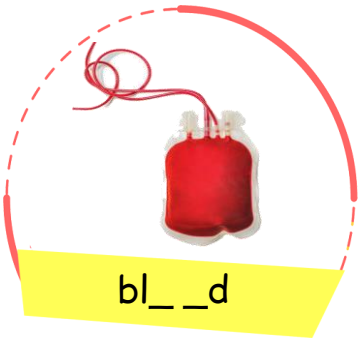
7. Supply the missing letters.



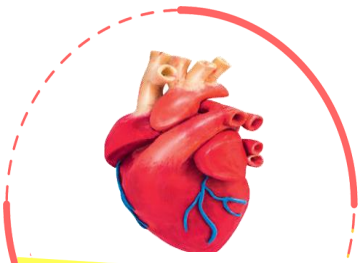
sk_l_ton



b_n_



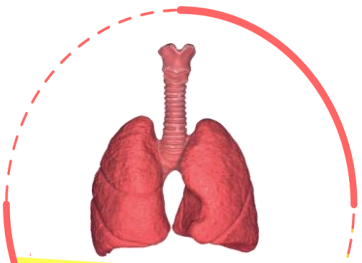
bl_ _d



ear



mu_cl_



lun_ _

8. Copy the following sentence.

My mother means life.

.....

Grammar on Unit 2

Comparative & Superlative Adjectives

تنقسم الصفة في المقارنة الي ثلاثة درجات :

1. **الدرجة البسيطة:** وهي الصفة العادية التي نستخدمها في وصف شخص اوشئ مثل:

- The ostrich is fast. - The ant is small. - Rola is tall.

ويمكن استخدامها عندما تكون الصفة موجودة لدي شخصين او شيئين ولكن بشكل متساوي او متقارب جدا مثل: Dina is as clever as Amany.

2. **درجة المقارنة:** نستخدمها لإظهار أن شخص أو شئ يتفوق علي الآخر في الصفة

مثل : Samy is shorter than Magdy.

3. **درجة التفضيل العليا:** ونستخدمها عندما نريد أن نقارن بين ثلاث أشخاص أو أشياء

أو أكثر : The ostrich is the biggest bird.

هيا بنا نتحدث عن ذلك بالتفصيل

1. في حالة تساوي الصفة نستخدم:

المقارن به + as + الصفة العادية + as + فعل يكون + الشخص او الشئ

Sally is as kind as Amira.

Rasha isn't as clever as Gameela.

تكوين درجات المقارنة :

أي صفة يتم تقسيمها إلي مقاطع والمقطع هو:

أن نسمع صوت حرف متحرك في الكلمة فإذا سمعنا حرف متحرك واحد معناه أن الصفة مقطع واحد أما إذا سمعنا حرفين متحركين معناه ان الصفة تتكون من مقطعين وهكذا مثل:





tall (مقطع واحد) \ fat (مقطع واحد) \ heavy (مقطعين)

useful (مقطعين) \ expensive (ثلاث مقاطع)

2. في حالة درجة المقارنة بين شخصين أو شيئين مع الصفات ذات المقطع الواحد:

الصفة العادية	المقارنة بين اثنين adjective الصفة + er + than
tall طويل	taller than اطول من
short قصير	shorter than أقصر من

E.g. Hana is tall. Hana is taller than Merna.

Ramez is short. Ramez is shorter than Samir.

في حالة درجة المقارنة بين شخصين أو شيئين مع الصفات ذو الثلاث مقاطع أو أكثر:

الصفة العادية	المقارنة بين اثنين more\ less الصفة than
beautiful جميل	more beautiful than أجمل من
dangerous خطير	less dangerous than أقل خطورة من

E.g. Snakes are more dangerous than monkeys.

الصفات ذو المقطعين نتعامل معها علي حسب نهايتها كما يلي:

أ. إذا انتهت الصفة ب (r \ er \ w \ y) تعامل معاملة الصفات ذو المقطع الواحد كما ذكرنا أعلاه مثل كلمة (heavy):

- The elephant is heavy.
- The elephant is heavier than the horse.

ب) إذا انتهت الصفة بأي نهاية أخري تعامل معاملة الصفات ذو الثلاث مقاطع فأكثر مثل :

- The computer is useful.
- The computer is more useful than TV.

3. في حالة درجة التفضيل العليا (المقارنة بين ثلاث أشخاص / أشياء أو أكثر) مع الصفات ذات المقطع الواحد:

الصفة العادية	المقارنة بين ثلاث أو أكثر the + adjective الصفة + est
small صغير	the smallest الأصغر
big كبير	the biggest الأكبر

E.g. It is the smallest vertebrate.

The ostrich is the biggest bird.

في حالة درجة التفضيل العليا (المقارنة بين ثلاث أشخاص / أشياء أو أكثر) مع الصفات ذو الثلاث مقاطع أو أكثر:

الصفة العادية	المقارنة بين ثلاث أو أكثر the most/least + adjective الصفة
enormous ضخم	the most enormous الأضخم
useful مفيد	the least useful الأقل فائدة

E.g. This is the most enormous building.

Notes: ملاحظات

1- عند إضافة (er / est) للصفة هناك صفات يحدث به تعديل كما يلي :

1) إذا انتهت الصفة ب (e) نضيف (r / st) فقط للصفة مثل :

nice / nicer than / the nicest

2) إذا انتهت الصفة ب (y) وقبلها حرف واحد ساكن تقلب إلي (i) ثم نضيف (er/est) مثل :

heavy / heavier than / the heaviest

happy / happier than / the happiest

3) إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف ساكن قبله حرف متحرك نضاعف الحرف الساكن اي (نكتبه مرتين) ثم نضيف (er/est) مثل :

fat / fatter than / the fattest big / bigger than / the biggest

2. الاستغناء عن (than) في المقارنة:

- تستطيع الاستغناء عن (than) مع صفات المقارنة إذا لم تذكر طرف المقارنة الآخر بعدها, كما يلي:

* Which is bigger, the cinema or the theatre?

- Mona is taller (than Nada).

Adverbs الظروف/الأحوال

Adverbs are words used to describe verbs or adjectives and refer to time and place as well.

الظروف هي كلمات تستخدم لوصف الأفعال والصفات وللإشارة إلي المكان والزمان كذلك.

Grandpa walks slowly.

كلمة **slowly** في هذه الجملة هي ظرف وصف للفعل **walks**.

Amira is very pretty.

كلمة **very** في هذه الجملة هي ظرف وصف للصفة **pretty**.

Omar isn't here.

كلمة **here** في هذه الجملة هي ظرف إشارة للمكان.

We played tennis yesterday.

كلمة **yesterday** في هذه الجملة هي ظرف إشارة للزمان.

Form and Use التكوين والاستخدام

The formation of adverbs with 'ly'. تكوين الظروف بإضافة حرفي ly .

A. Many adverbs of manner and some adverbs of degree are formed by adding 'ly' to corresponding adjectives:

quick, quickly - slow, slowly - sad, sadly

Spelling notes ملاحظات إملائية

a. A final 'y' changes to 'i':

angry, angrily - happy, happily , witty, wittily.

b. A final 'e' is retained نحتفظ بها before 'ly':

extreme, extremely - free, freely.

c. Adjectives ending in 'a consonant + le' drop the 'e' and add 'y':

الصفات المنتهية بحرف ساكن + **le** قم بحذف حرف **e** ثم أضف حرف **y** فقط.

terrible, terribly - horrible, horribly

probably, probably - simple, simply

Note that the adverb of 'good' is 'well'.

لاحظ أن الظرف من **good** هو **well**.

B. Adjectives ending in 'ly':

'daily, weekly, monthly, yearly, etc. ... kindly and sometimes leisurely can be adjectives and adverbs, but most other adjectives ending in 'ly',

e.g. 'friendly, likely, lonely, etc.' cannot be used as adverbs and have no adverb form. To supply this deficiency we use a similar adverb or adverb phrase.

مثل (يومي - أسبوعي - شهري - سنوي - الخ .. أو عطوف وأحيانا متمهل) من الممكن أن تستخدم الصفات المنتهية بـ **ly** كصفات أو ظروف

علي سبيل المثال (ودود - محتمل - وحيد) يمكن أن تستخدم ظروف ولكن معظم الصفات الأخرى المنتهية بـ ly

وليس لها أشكال ظروف خاصة بها ولكي نعوض هذا النقص نلجأ إلي استخدام ظرف مشابه أو جملة ظرفية.

likely (adjective) ⟹ probably (adverb) *من المحتمل – ربما*

friendly (adjective) ⟹ in a friendly way (adverb phrase) *بطريقة ودية*

Adjectives and adverbs with the same form: صفات وظروف لها نفس الشكل

fast - hard - back - wrong - high - low - long - short - ill - well - early - late - near - far

Used as adjectives مستخدمين كصفات	Used as adverbs مستخدمين كظروف
a fast train	The train goes fast.
The work is hard.	They work hard.
You look ill/well.	An ill/a well-made road.
You must be early for school.	You must get up early for school.

Activities
On Grammar

1. Underline the correct words in brackets. (Structure)

1. Nader is (fat - as fat - fatter) than Adel.
2. Nawal is thinner (then - as - than) Heba.
3. The cheetah is the (fast – faster - fastest) animal.
4. Ahmed speaks three languages (well - good - better).
5. He looked at me (angry - angrier – angrily).
6. You have to write more (careful - careless – carefully).
7. I slept (bad - worse - badly) last night.
8. It isn't a (good – well – best) idea.
9. She sang (happy - happier - happily).
10. The lion is (more – less – as) dangerous than the giraffe.

2. Rearrange.

1. She is a good swimmer. (swims)

2. No boy is cleverer than Hossam. (cleverest)

3. Hana is a good cook. (well)

4. Summer isn't as cold as winter. (colder)

5. Sanaa is fluent at English. (speaks)

2. Correct the mistakes.

1. He plays tennis good.

2. She is the tall girl in our class.

3. She cooks terrible.



Activities
On Unit 2

1. Underline the correct words in brackets.

1. Turtles come onto (water – trees – land) to lay their eggs.
2. Nada walks (slow – slowest – slowly).
3. Frogs always lay their eggs in (land – water – sand).
4. Amphibians take in (food – eggs – oxygen) through their skin and their lungs.
5. Hadeer is the (good - better - best) girl in our class.
6. Fish have (hair – fur – scales).
7. Hager is a (slowly - slow - slowest) learner.
8. He spoke (warmth - warm - warmly).

2. Rearrange.

1. land - Most- live – mammals - on.

2. of - are - bones – Beaks – made.

3. four - Most - legs – have – reptiles.

3. Supply the missing parts the following dialogue.

Eyad : What is the biggest animal on land?

Maged:

Eyad : What is the biggest animal in the world?

Maged:

Eyad :?

Maged: The smallest animal is the bee hummingbird.

4. Read the following passage and answer the questions.

The smallest bird is the bee hummingbird, which is about 5.5 centimeters long. It lives in Cuba. The biggest bird is the ostrich. It can be 2.5 meters tall! Ostriches are faster than leopards, but they can't fly.

A. Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False).

1. Ostriches are faster than leopards. (……)
2. Ostriches can fly. (……)
3. The ostrich can be 5.4 meters tall (……)

B. Answer the following questions:

4. What is the biggest bird?

……

5. What is the smallest bird?

……

5. Look and write.



Invertebrates – cold-blooded

……



crab - shell

……



arachnids - legs

……



fish - colored

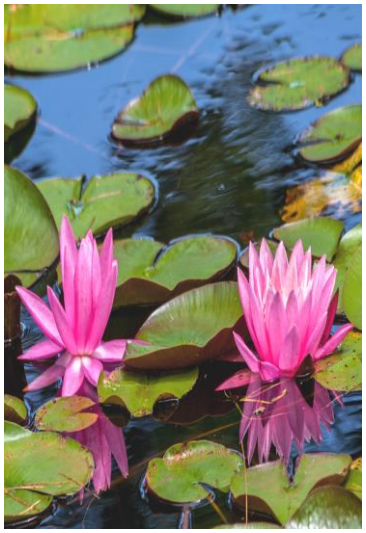
……

6. Write a paragraph of four sentences on.

"Water lily"

Ideas to help you:

- Where do we grow plants?
- What are the water lily?
- What do water lily have?
- What do they make?

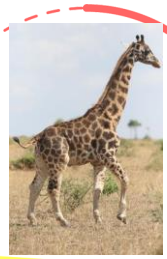


.....

.....

.....

7. Supply the missing letters.



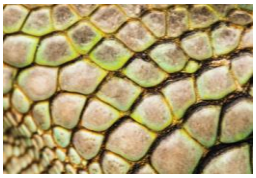
gira_ _e



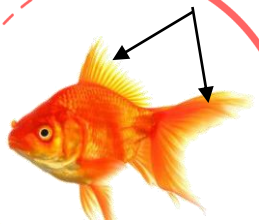
gi_ _s



f _ _



cale



_ _ns



b_ _k

8. Copy the following sentence:

I live in Egypt.

.....

Grammar on Unit 3

Past simple Tense
زمن الماضي البسيط



We form the Past Simple Tense with the subject and the main verb.
In the affirmative sentences, we form the past simple of regular verbs with the ending (-ed).

يتكون زمن الماضي البسيط من الفاعل والفعل الرئيسي. في صيغة الإثبات ينتهي الفعل بالنهاية (ed).

For Example: Scribes worked for the ruling dynasties.

Spelling rules

We form the past simple of regular verbs as follows:

نكون صيغة الفعل في زمن الماضي البسيط للأفعال المنتظمة كالآتي:

When a verb ends in (-e), we only add (-d).

إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (e-) فقط نضيف حرف (d-).

use → used | unite → united | rule → ruled

When a verb ends in (-y) and before that there is a vowel, we take off the (-y) and add (-ied).

إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (y-) مسبوق بحرف ساكن نحذف (y-) ونضيف (ied-).

study → studied | try → tried | carry → carried

But if there is a vowel before the (-y), we just add (-ed).

ولكن إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (y-) مسبوق بحرف متحرك فقط نضيف (ed-).

play → played | stay → stayed | enjoy → enjoyed

If a verb has only one syllable, ends in a consonant and before that consonant there is a single vowel, we double the final consonant before adding(-ed).

إذا انتهى الفعل ذو المقطع الواحد بحرف ساكن مسبوق بحرف متحرك نضاعف الحرف الساكن قبل إضافة (-ed).

stop → stopped | step → stepped | clap → clapped

But if the verb ends in (-w or -x), the final consonant is not doubled.

ولكن إذا انتهى الفعل بإحدى الحروف (w- أو x-) لا نضاعف الحرف الساكن.

snow → snowed | fix → fixed | mix → mixed

We do not form the past simple of irregular verbs by adding (-ed). Each irregular verb has its own form of the past simple.

لا نكون زمن الماضي البسيط بالنسبة للأفعال الغير منتظمة بإضافة (-ed) ولكن لها شكل خاص.

For Example: Ancient Egyptians built the pyramids.

Scribes wrote on stone and paper.

Use

We use the Past Simple to talk about:: نستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن

Something that happened at a particular time in the past.

حدث وقع في فترة معينة في الماضي

For Example: I was sick last week.

Actions that started and finished in the past.

أحداث بدأت وانتهت في الماضي

For Example: Last Friday we went to the Egyptian Museum.

Time expressions التعبيرات الزمنية

We often use the following time expressions with the past simple:

غالبا نستخدم التعبيرات الزمنية الآتية مع زمن الماضي البسيط

yesterday, yesterday morning, last (night, week, weekend, month, year), in the past, ten years ago, in 2018, on November 9th, etc.

For Example: I called my friend an hour ago.

She visited the Pyramids yesterday.



These expressions usually go at the beginning or at the end of the sentence.

تأتى التعبيرات الزمنية عادة في بداية أو نهاية الجملة.

For Example: They went to the park last weekend and ate ice cream.

We visited our uncle last month.

In the question,

we form the past simple by putting (Did) at the beginning of the question before the subject and the bare infinitive.

نكون زمن الماضي البسيط في صيغة السؤال بإضافة (Did) في بداية السؤال قبل الفاعل والفعل المصدر.

For Example: Did they work for the ruling dynasties?

In short answers,

We use (did/ didn't) on their own. We don't repeat the verb.

For Example: A: Did you study the history of Egypt?

B: Yes, I did. / No, I didn't.

In Wh- question, we use this form

(Question word (What) + did + subject الفاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل ...?).

For Example: What did scribes do?

They wrote down everything that happened.

Activities
On Grammar

1. Underline the correct words in brackets. (Structure)

1. Is this cup (you - your - yours)?
2. The coffee is (me - my - mine).
3. He lives in (her – hers - she) house.
4. You might want (you - your - yours) phone.
5. The new car is (they - theirs – their).
6. He (doesn't - don't – didn't) watch TV yesterday.
7. Sanaa didn't (watch - watches - watched) TV.
8. Hanaa (go – goes – went) to the zoo last week.
9. Omar (visit - visited - will visit) me yesterday.
10. (Did – Do – Does) he wash his car yesterday?

2. Rearrange.

1. These are my hands. (This)

.....

2. This is Ahmed's car. (his)

.....

3. Mona cooked lunch. (What)

.....

4. Nada never washed the dishes. (didn't)

.....

5. I go to school every day. (yesterday)

.....

2. Correct the mistakes.

1. I studies my lessons yesterday.

.....

2. He wash his car last week.

.....

3. I doesn't play football an hour ago.

.....

Activities
On Unit 3

1. Underline the correct words in brackets.

1. Important (dynasties – stones – boats) controlled Egypt for many years.
2. Hala (wash – washes – washed) the dishes yesterday.
3. Egyptians used (scribes– boats– sea) to write down everything that happened.
4. Scribes wrote on paper made from (wool – wood – papyrus reeds).
5. I (worked - work - works) in a factory in 2010.
6. Lots of ships sail in and out of the (dam - port – library) of Alexandria.
7. She (live - lives - lived) here ten years ago.
8. Nader (is - was - were) at the park last week.

2. Rearrange.

1. in – Governorate – live- Bani Swaif – **I**.

2. music – has - traditional – **Egypt** – lots of – folk.

3. tombs – in – see - museums – **We** – hieroglyphs – and – can.

3. Supply the missing parts the following dialogue.

Eyad : What is a community?

Maged:

Eyad : What does it include?

Maged:

Eyad :?

Maged: Yes, we are part of that community.



4. Read the following passage and answer the questions.

Egypt is a country with a very long and interesting history. People started to live near the Nile about 9,000 years ago, in 7000 BCE.

At first, there were two separate areas. Lower Egypt was in the north, where the Nile joins the sea. Upper Egypt was in the south, where the Nile flows through the deserts of Africa.

A. Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False).

1. Egypt has a long history. (……)
2. Lower Egypt was in the south. (……)
3. The Nile flows through the deserts of Africa. (……)

B. Answer the following questions:

4- How many areas were there in Egypt?

……

5- Where was Upper Egypt?

……

5. Look and write.



Egypt – controlled

……



Damietta - 910 square kilometers

……



Alexandria - port

……



live - governorate

……

6. Write a paragraph of four sentences on.

"Aswan"



Information you may need:

- Where is Aswan Governorate?
- Where is its capital?
- Where is the High Dam?
- When did engineers finish the High Dam?

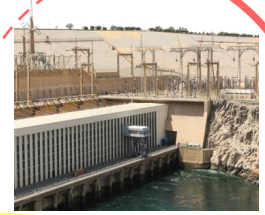


.....

.....

.....

7. Supply the missing letters.



Hig_ Da_



b_ _ch



geo_rap_y



it



s_uba di_ing



ri_ _r

8. Copy the following sentence:

Samir always watches TV.

.....

Grammar on Unit 4

Plural جمع الأسماء

كيف نحول الاسم المفرد إلي اسم جمع؟

القاعدة العامة: هي إضافة حرف الـ (s) إلي الاسم المفرد مثل:

الاسم المفرد	جمعه	الاسم المفرد	جمعه	الاسم المفرد	جمعه
boy	boys	book	books	pen	pens
girl	girls	wall	walls	cat	cats

شواذ الجمع

1) إذا انتهي الاسم ب (o \ ch \ sh \ ss \ s \ x \ z) نضيف له (es) مثل :

الاسم المفرد	جمعه	الاسم المفرد	جمعه	الاسم المفرد	جمعه
box	boxes	watch	watches	church	churches
glass	glasses	brush	brushes	potato	potatoes

2) إذا انتهي الاسم ب (y) وقبلها حرف ساكن تقلب ال (y) الي (ies) مثل:

الاسم المفرد	جمعه	الاسم المفرد	جمعه	الاسم المفرد	جمعه
lady	ladies	country	countries	army	armies

3) إذا انتهي الاسم ب (f \ fe) تقلب الي (ves) مثل:

الاسم المفرد	جمعه	الاسم المفرد	جمعه	الاسم المفرد	جمعه
wife	wives	wolf	wolves	half	halves

4) هناك أسماء تستخدم مفرد وجمع بدون تغيير في شكلها :

الاسم المفرد	جمعه	الاسم المفرد	جمعه	الاسم المفرد	جمعه
deer	deer	sheep	sheep	fish	fish

5) هناك أسماء شواذ تحفظ كما هي:

الاسم المفرد	جمعه	الاسم المفرد	جمعه	الاسم المفرد	جمعه
man	men	woman	women	mouse	mice
child	children	tooth	teeth	foot	feet
goose	geese	ox	oxen	louse	lice

Connectors الروابط

so that لكن

1.

مضارع او ماضي	to / in order to	مصدر
مضارع ماضي	so that in order that	مصدر + can + فاعل مصدر + could + فاعل

انظر إلي الأمثلة التالية:

- My grandma took me to a spinning and weaving workshop to learn about this craft.
- My grandma took me to a spinning and weaving workshop so that I could learn about this craft.
- They use these plants and roots to make beautiful dyes to color the wool.

While بينما

نستخدمها كرابط زمني بمعني (بينما) وتربط غالبا حدثين قطع أحدهما الأخر:

- The guide explained how the artisans make the carpets while we watched them weave.

After بعد

نستخدمها كرابط زمني بمعني (بعد) وتأتي في بداية الجملة أو وسطها:

-The artisans spin the wool to make it into yarn after they clean it.

Before قبل

نستخدمها كرابط زمني بمعني (قبل) وتأتي في بداية الجملة أو وسطها:

Before the artisans can weave the carpets, they have to make the warp.

They have to clean, wash, and dry the wool before they can use it.

As soon as بمجرد أن

نستخدمها كرابط زمني بمعني (بمجرد أن) وتأتي في بداية الجملة أو وسطها:

As soon as the yarn is dry, they can use it to weave a carpet.

Every time كل مرة

نستخدمها بمعني (كل مرة) وتأتي غالبا في بداية الجملة:

Every time I look at it, I remember how much work and skill it takes to make just one carpet.

Although علي الرغم

نستخدمها لبيان التناقض (الجملة الثانية عكس الجملة الأولي) وتأتي في وسط أو بداية الجملة:

These artisans only use natural vegetable dyes, although some other workshops use synthetic dyes

Even though علي الرغم

نستخدمها لبيان التناقض وتأتي في بداية الجملة أو وسطها:

I think the bright colors are the most beautiful ones even though some people prefer dark colors.

Activities
On Grammar

1. Underline the correct words in brackets. (Structure)

1. Mona came (while - although - because) we were talking about her.
2. I like Mr Ali (when - after - although) he isn't my friend.
3. I came (although – though - as soon as) you called me.
4. He is unhappy (as soon as - before - although) he is rich.
5. (If - As soon – When) my doorbell rang, my dog barked.
6. The dog needs to go out (as soon as - although – to) you get home.
7. Call me (after - although - even though) you arrive at the station.
8. I find television very educating. (Although – How – Every time). somebody turns on the set, I go into the other room and read a book.
9. I run so fast (although - so that - to) I can score a goal.
10. (So – Before – So that) he contacted me, I was going to call him.

2. Rearrange.

1. I'm staying in even though the sun is out. (although)

2. As it's raining, I'm staying in. (While)

3. I'm going out after the football has finished. (before)

4. I'm going out before the rain starts. (after)

5. I'm going out when the weather improves. (as soon as)

2. Correct the mistakes.

1. I'll stay out although the weather is good.

2. He came to work, because he felt sick.

3. I need to finish the report after the manager arrives from Paris.

Activities
On Unit 4

1. Underline the correct words in brackets.

1. Bani Swaif is a wonderful (city – village – country).
2. (When- Although- So that) I came in the room, everyone looked at me.
3. He is a carpenter. He works in a (bank – workshop – school).
4. (Swimmers - learners - Pedestrians) walk on pavements
5. Reading is my favorite subject (although- because- as soon) I'm really good at math.
6. My city is (sparsely- gradually- densely) populated. It's very busy
7. (As soon as- Before- After) you play those video games, you need to clean your room.
8. I train hard (although - so that - every time) I can win the race.

2. Rearrange.

1. populated - in - **I** - city - sparsely - a - live.

2. an - urban - **It** – environment - is.

3. got - **I** - brother – have – one.

3. Supply the missing parts the following dialogue:

Eyad : Where do you live?

Maged:

Eyad : Which food do you grow?

Maged:

Eyad :?

Maged: I live in a traditional house with my family.



4. Read the following passage and answer the questions:

I like my city. It is called Bani Swaif. It is on the river Nile. It's south of Giza. It isn't densely populated. There are a lot of interesting sites. I live in a big apartment near the centre city. I live with my parents, my brother Ahmed and my sister Zeinab. I like drinking lemonade and watching the boats on the river. My favorite places are botanical gardens and the bazaar.

A. Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False).

1. Bani Swaif is a small city. (.....)
2. Omar lives in a big house. (.....)
3. Zeinab is Omar's mother. (.....)

B. Answer the following questions:

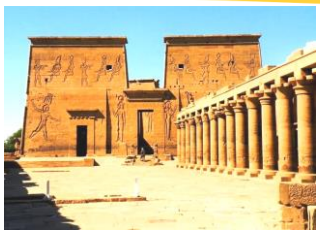
4. What are Omar's favorite places?

.....

5. What does he like drinking?

.....

5. Look and write.



visit – temple

.....



live - apartment

.....



cars - congestion

.....



dry - wool

.....

6. Write a paragraph of four sentences on.

"A visit to a carpet workshop"

Questions to help you:

- Where did you go last summer?
- What did you see?
- What do artisans do?
- How do they dye wool?



.....

.....

.....

.....

7. Supply the missing letters.



d_ _



ca_pe_



wa_ _



g_ _se



don_ _y



buff_ _o

8. Copy the following sentence:

I love my village.

.....

Grammar on Unit 5

Pronouns الضمائر

1. الضمير هو كلمة تحل محل الاسم لمنع تكراره او للإشارة إلي الأشخاص أو الأشياء دون التصريح بالأسماء.

2. أنواع الضمائر الشخصية: وتنقسم الي:

(أ) الضمائر الشخصية الفاعلة وهي:

I	He	She	It	You	We	They
أنا	هو	هي	هواهي لغير العاقل	أنت \ أنتم	نحن	هم \ هن عاقل \غير عاقل

وتأتي الضمائر الشخصية الفاعلة في بداية الجملة كفاعل لها في الجمل الخبرية او بعد الفعل المساعد في السؤال مثل:

He is a teacher. They are clever. Is he tall?

(ب) الضمائر الشخصية المفعولة وهي:

me	him	her	It	You	us	them
أنا	هو	هي	هواهي لغير العاقل	أنت \أنتم	نحن	هم \ هن عاقل \غير عاقل

وتأتي الضمائر الشخصية المفعولة في نهاية الجملة او بعد الفعل .

Mona saw him. Ali met them. Dalia helped us.

صفات الملكية

تستخدم قبل الاسم لبيان ملكية الشئ او الشخص ولابد ان تتبع بالاسم المملوك:

my	his	her	its	your	our	their
my book	his book	her book	its tail	your book	our book	their book
كتابي (انا)	كتابه (هو)	كتابها (هي)	ذيله\ذيلها	كتابك\كتابكم (انت\انتم)	كتابنا (نحن)	كتابهم (هم)

لاحظ الفرق بين ضمير الملكية وصفه الملكية: ضمير الملكية لا يتبع باسم بعده اما صفه الملكية لابد ان تتبع باسم

- This is my book .
- This book is mine.
- This is her bag.
- This bag is hers.

ضمائر النكرة والتوزيع

ضمائر النكرة تشير إلي الأسماء المبهمة الغير محددة مثل:

one - ones - any - others - many - much - a few - a little

- Many went to school.
- A few came to the party .

أما **ضمائر التوزيع**: تشير إلي توزيع صفه أو اسم أو فعل علي احد أو بعض أو كل الأشخاص أو الناس مثل:

some - either - neither - both - all - each - enough - half - two

- Each was given a peach
- Both were thieves .

وهناك **ضمائر توزيع نكرة مركبة** في الجدول التالي:

	one	body	thing
no	no one (none) لا احد	no body لا احد	no thing لا شئ
some	someone شخص ما	somebody شخص ما	something شئ ما
any	anyone اي شخص	anybody اي شخص	anything اي شئ
every	everyone كل شخص	everybody كل شخص	everything كل شئ
each	each one كل شخص	-	-
	بدلا من الأشخاص	بدلا من الأشخاص	بدلا من الأشياء

- Everyone enjoyed the party.
- He found nobody at the club.

راجع الجدول التالي

الاسم	الضمير الذي يشير اليه	مثال
اسم مفرد مذكر عاقل	He - him - his	Lara did her science project
اسم مفرد مؤنث عاقل	she/ her	Wael did his science project
اسم جمع عاقل او غير عاقل	they / them/ their	The boys played. They were tired.
اسم مفرد غير عاقل	it / its	This is my cat. Its tail is long.
someone Both Neither of Each of	they / them / their	- Both children presented their projects -Neither of the children was nervous about their presentations.

Activities
On Grammar

1. Underline the correct words in brackets. (Structure)

1. Both boys ate (his - their - her) hamburgers.
2. Give me (mine - hers - your) pen.
3. Sara was angry. (Her – Hers - She) went out.
4. I saw his glasses. (It - They - he) were broken.
5. I (go - going – goes) to school on foot.
6. He (speak - speaking – speaks) English well.
7. They took (our - ours - we) bags with them.
8. The cat ate (their – its – it) food.
9. Nader met (his - he - him) friend on his way home.
10. (Is – Do – Does) he interested in reading?

2. Rearrange.

1. I am clever. (He)

.....

2. I bought one pen. (two)

.....

3. This is my best shirt. (These)

.....

4. Nada has got some books (book)

.....

5. This is Mona's bag. (her)

.....

2. Correct the mistakes.

1. Hala gave me his pencil.

.....

2. Adel saw her uncle yesterday.

.....

3. Nadeen bought two bag.

.....

Activities
On Unit 5

1. Underline the correct words in brackets.

1. What is the door made (in – of – up)?
2. I (am – is – are) a student in a primary school.
3. We use stone to (wear- damage – construct) buildings and bridges.
4. We breathe air through our nose into our (hearts- lungs- intestines)
5. The boy cried and needed (his- him – he) toy.
6. Fossil fuels are a (renewable – non renewable – changed) resource.
7. Ahmed is (I – my – mine) brother.
8. Ahmed's mother asked (he – him – his) to open the door.

2. Rearrange.

1. Cairo - in - Mona – years - three - for - worked.

2. would - an – interview - to – Asmaa – like - have.

3. sunny – hot – The weather – and – is.

3. Supply the missing parts the following dialogue:

Sayed: What is your father's job?

Essam: (1) teacher.

Sayed: Where does he work?

Essam: (2)

Sayed: (3)?

Essam: Yes, it's a hard job.



4. Read the following passage and answer the questions.

Teamwork is very important for the success of a project. You should share your ideas and feelings with others. Make sure to listen to others ideas too. Stay calm and don't get upset. Be positive and help the other team members be more successful

A. Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False).

1. To do a project, you should be negative. (.....)
2. We should help others. (.....)
3. We shouldn't listen to others in the team (.....)

B. Answer the following questions:

4. How can a project be successful?

.....

5. Should we share our ideas with other people?

.....

5. Look and write.



kiss – mother

.....



school - finish

.....



collect - energy

.....



teamwork - important

.....

6. Write a paragraph of four sentences on

"What do you do every day?"

Questions to help you:

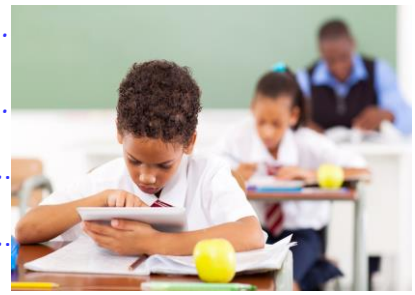
- When do you get up?
- What time do you go to school?
- What do you do after school?
- When do you sleep?

.....

.....

.....

.....



7. Supply the missing letters.



miner_ _



petrole_ _



pla_ti_



oo



s_ _l



w_ _er

8. Copy the following sentence:

Hend likes drawing pictures.

.....

Grammar on Unit 6

Past simple in questions:

We form the past simple by putting (**Did**) at the beginning of the question before the subject and the bare infinitive.

نكون زمن الماضي البسيط في صيغة السؤال بإضافة (**Did**) في بداية السؤال قبل الفاعل والفعل المصدر.

Did they take a river ferry?
Did you travel to Alexandria?

In short answers,
We use (**did**/ **didn't**) on their own. We don't repeat the verb.

A: **Did you visit** Ismailia?
B: Yes, **I did**. / No, **I didn't**.

In Wh- question, we use this form

(**Question word** (**What**) + **did** + **subject** الفاعل + **inf.** مصدر الفعل ...?).

What did they go yesterday? **They went** to the museum.

Present Perfect Tense

Form (**have**/**has** + **past participle** التصريف الثالث)

Present Perfect is used to show events that have happened in a period of time up to now.

يُستخدم زمن المضارع التام للتعبير عن أحداث قد وقعت في فترة في الماضي ويمتد تأثيرها حتى الآن.

She **has** **been** on a train.
Auxiliary فعل مساعد — past participle التصريف الثالث

I **have** **traveled** on a ship.
past participle التصريف الثالث — auxiliary فعل مساعد

ever تستخدم في السؤال بمعنى (في وقت ما)

Use the adverb ever to ask if someone has performed a certain action at some points in their life.

Have you **ever been** on an airplane? Yes, I have. / No, I haven't.

never تدل على النفي بمعنى (أبدا)

Use the adverb never to show that someone hasn't performed a certain action in their life.

I have never been on a train.

Note: have ⟶ (I , we, they, you, plural) - has ⟶ (he, she, it, singular)

Activities
On Grammar

1. Underline the correct words in brackets. (Structure)

1. The government will (build - building - built) a new school.
2. My parents won't (buy - buys - buying) a new car.
3. (Will – Does - Did) airplanes use solar energy next year?
4. (Has - Have - Did) you ever been to Aswan?
5. I (have - has – will) played tennis.
6. He (will - has – have) studied Science.
7. Has she (watch - watches - watched) TV?
8. I (will visit – visited – have visited) Nada tomorrow.
9. Sayed has (never - ever - every) played hockey.
10. (Will – Do – Does) he wash his car next week?

2. Rearrange.

1. Have you ever been to Cairo? (he)

.....

2. Are you going to play football? (will)

.....

3. Has she trained hard? (Have)

.....

4. People will use flying cars in the future. (What..?)

.....

5. No, robots won't fly airplanes in 2025. (Will ...?)

.....

2. Correct the mistakes.

1. I study my lessons tomorrow.

.....

2. Have you never cooked lunch?

.....

3. I doesn't go to our village tomorrow.

.....



Activities
On Unit 6

1. Underline the correct words in brackets.

1. The government will send water to the desert cities through (bus – ship – a pipe).
2. I (am – has – have) read this story.
3. The best way to travel from Luxor to Aswan is going by (rail – road – pipe) because it's more comfortable than driving.
4. Mars is a (town – city – planet).
5. I will (take - takes - took) a flying car to school.
6. Autonomous machine is another name for a (robot – bus – ship).
7. Will you (play - plays - played) with your sister?
8. Have you ever (see - saw - seen) a lion?

2. Rearrange.

1. will – do – **What** – you?

.....

2. your - tell - password- friends - **Don't** - your.

.....

3. watch - news - We – the - won't.

.....

3. Supply the missing parts the following dialogue.

Emad : What is your father's job?

Magdi:

Emad : What does he do?

Magdi:

Emad :?

Magdi: Also, he will build new automobiles and high-speed trains.

4. Read the following passage and answer the questions.

V R developers create a new visual world you see when you play a virtual reality game and wear a special headset. Museums will use these VR headsets so that you can experience walking around an ancient building or city. User Experience Designers (UX Designers) create a positive experience between the user and the technology. They make sure that your websites, apps and smart machines are safe and easy to use.

A. Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False).

1. VR developers create an experience between user and technology (.....)
2. We can't wear the special headsets. (.....)
3. UX designer is a job. (.....)

B. Answer the following questions:

4. Give a title to the passage.

.....

5. What do UX designers do?

.....

5. Look and write.



Robotics engineers – design

.....



travel - Moon

.....



Airplanes - solar

.....



search engines - useful

.....

6. Write a paragraph of four sentences on

"Be safe online"

.....

.....

.....

.....



7. Supply the missing letters.



h_ _dset



p_ane_s



s_acecra_t



we_ pa_e



pi_ _



r_i_

8. Punctuate.

mr mohamed is our teacher

.....

Activity 1

1. Underline the correct words in brackets.

1. I (train – dye – spin) hard to get a promotion.
2. That is (mine – my – me) uncle. His name is Sami.
3. You must have a (positive – negative – bad) attitude towards others.
4. We (don't – aren't – didn't) go to school yesterday.
5. When we move, we use our (stomach – bones – tongues) and muscles.
6. Rana (isn't – doesn't – don't) like spiders.
7. The first train (well – line – carpet) in Egypt opened in 1854.
8. We use a (fur – fare – ferry) to cross rivers.

2. Rewrite.

1. An Asian elephant is smaller than the African elephant. (bigger)

2. Mona plays handball every day. (always)

3. People may travel to Mars. I am not sure. (will)

4. These are my books. (This…)

3. Rearrange.

1. skeleton - bones - our – is - up of – all – in - body -made – **The.**

2. colors -other – **We** – by-primary – can't –colors- mixing – make.

4. Read the passage and answer the questions.

We use our digestive system to digest what we eat and drink. We put food in our mouths. We chew food with our teeth. Then the food goes down the esophagus. It arrives in the stomach. In the stomach, the food mixes with a special liquid. The liquid changes the food into energy and nutrients. We need the energy and nutrients in our body.

A. Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False).

1. We chew food with our ears. (……)
2. The food goes down the esophagus. (……)
3. We don't need the energy and nutrients. (……)

B. Answer the following questions:

4. What do we use to digest the food?

……

5. What happens in the stomach?

……

5. Look and write.



…… move our bodies.



Birds are ……

6. Supply the missing letters.



fi_ _



s_ale_



cam_ _



vi_li_

Activity 2

1. Underline the correct words in brackets.

1. Blood is pumped around our body by the (lungs – heart- liver).
2. The blue car is (fast – faster – fastest) than the red car.
3. People will travel to Mars for (muscle – blood – vacation) in 2052
4. I washed the fruit (after – before – as soon) I ate it.
5. (Jellyfish –Invertebrates –Vertebrates) are animals with backbones.
6. He (don't – doesn't – aren't) buy vegetables.
7. The biggest (city – store – shop) in the UAE is Dubai.
8. Nada speaks (loud – loudly – loudness).

2. Rewrite.

1. Amira watches cartoons. (not)

2. I eat healthy food. I exercise. (before)

3. No country is more beautiful than Egypt. (most)

4. He wakes up early to catch the bus. (so that)

3. Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Zeina: ……?

Aliaa: They are reptiles

Zeina: How many legs do they have?

Aliaa: ……

Zeina: Do they have fur?

Aliaa : ……

4. Look and write.



village - sparsely populated

.....



Amphibians – lay

.....

5. Supply the missing letters.



c_ _l



min_ _al



s_ri_e



b_ _k

6. Look and write a paragraph of four (4) sentences.

.....

.....

.....

.....



7. Read and complete.

see – loud – red - weighs

1. Omar left the room because the music was too
2. People who are blind can't
3. An adult brain 1400 grams.

Activity 3

1. Underline the correct words in brackets.

1. The Paralympics games is an international (country – competition – disability).
2. He won a (wooden - wool – gold) medal in the last competition.
3. We use sign (business – language – food) to communicate with the blind.
4. Parrots are noisier (than – to – then) spiders.
5. (Secondary - Mixed – Primary) colors are red, yellow and blue.
6. Ali is a (good - bad - well) cook. He cooks well.
7. We (are – will – won't) watch the news on television in the future.
8. Most plants grow in (air - water - soil).

2. Rewrite.

1. Every child presented his project on Monday. (Both)

2. Do you like living in a tent? (No)

3. The water lily isn't as big as the sunflower. (bigger)

4. I will never buy a new car next year. (won't)

3. Read and complete.

entrepreneur – weather – solar - virtual

1. An is someone who starts a new business.
2. Have you ever tried playing a reality game
3. The is usually hot and sunny in the desert
4. The farm was built last year.

4. Read the following passage and answer the questions:

To lead a healthy life, we need a mixture of physical and mental activities. Physical activity is good for your body. It makes our muscles strong and helps us use up the calories we get from food. Mental activities are good for our brain. When you draw, paint, write, or play an instrument, you really focus on the creative activity, so you relax. Go to the summer camp. Play sports and learn new skills. Make friends and have fun

A. Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False).

1. Physical activity only is good for your body. (.....)
2. We should make friends. (.....)
3. Physical activity makes our muscles strong. (.....)

B. Answer the following questions:

4. What are the two activities we need to be healthy?

.....

5. What are mental activities important for?

.....

5. Look and write.



visit – grandparents

.....



fossil - resource

.....

6. Supply the missing letters.



w_ve pow_r



sp_ _



h_a_t



c_nges_ion

Activity 4

1. Underline the correct words in brackets.

1. We need (sugar – fats – salt) for a healthy nervous system.
2. Most mammals live on (land - water – air).
3. Braille is a (code – hole – pool) using different combination of dots.
4. A (spicy- variety- dynasty) was an important family that ruled for many years.
5. These are Ola's shoes. They are (her – hers – she)
6. UX is short for User (Excitement – Experience – Exception).
7. (Senders – Showers – Scribes) were very important people in society.
8. Two of the most popular (crafts – subjects – foods) are khayameya and carpet making.

2. Rewrite.

1. The rose isn't as colorful as the daisy. (more)

2. These are my dolls. (This...)

3. When I look at him, I remember his brother. (Every time)

4. I meet him from time to time. (Sometimes)

3. Look and write a paragraph of four (4) sentences.

.....

.....

.....

.....



4. Look and write.



Algae - polyps

……



feed - milk

……

5. Supply the missing letters.



de_e_t



t_dal _ower



w_ _p



o_ tri_h

6. Read and match.

1. A grasshopper can	a. when we play.
2. We move muscles	b. everything we do.
3. Our brain controls	c. very famous.
4. Raqs Assaya is	d. jump far.

7. Rearrange.

1. use – ears - for – **We**– hearing - our.

……

2. in - a – - big -live – **I** – city.

……

3. will – Mars - to - travel – **We**.

……

Activity 5

1. Underline the correct words in brackets.

1. Carbohydrates give us (water – air – energy).
2. The bear is (strong – as strong – stronger) than the pelican.
3. Reptiles are (hot – cold - warm)- blooded.
4. It's (the – then – than) biggest city in our country.
5. A plant produces (pollen – balls – bills) in a flower.
6. A skilled worker can work (quick – quickly – quickest).
7. He likes swimming (so that – every time – although) he can't swim.
8. There are special search engines for (school – teachers – children).

2. Rewrite.

1. No, Hana won't visit us tomorrow. (Will...?)

2. A snake is more dangerous than a spider. (less)

3. Plants need sunshine. (A plant)

4. I want to go out. It is raining. (although)

3. Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Doaa:?

Rania: Yes, I like music

Doaa: What kind of music do you prefer?

Rania:

Doaa: Who is your favourite singer?

Rania:

4. Read the following passage and answer the questions:

Amphibians can live on land and on water, but they need water or a moist habitat to survive. Like reptiles, they are cold-blooded and they lay eggs. However, amphibians, like frogs and toads, always lay their eggs in water. They have smooth skin, not scales. They can take in oxygen through their skin and their lungs.

A. Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False).

1. Amphibians can live on land and on water. (……)
2. Amphibians have smooth skin, not scales. (……)
3. Amphibians are warm-blooded. (……)

B. Answer the following questions:

4. What do Amphibians need to survive?

……

5. Give a suitable title for the passage.

……

5. Look and write.



The …… is in Aswan.



My father is a ……

6. Supply the missing letters.



f_ _



lo_ _



n_ _



s_lar _ower

Activity 6

1. Underline the correct words in brackets.

1. Braille has different combinations of (dates – dots – dust).
2. Laila told Anna (hers – him – her) address.
3. (Tell – Don't tell – Give) your friends about your sentence password.
4. Will you (learns – learning – learn) to drive a car?
5. The whale shark is the (bigger – biggest – as big) fish in the world.
6. (Cars – Boats – Pipelines) are used for carrying natural resources.
7. Bats are (harmful – bad – useful) for farmers.
8. I'll take you to the park (as soon as – so – but) I've finished this.

2. Rewrite.

1. No girl is as beautiful as Aysel. (most)

2. We ate pies when we watched the football match. (While)

3. Have you ever seen a robot? (never)

4. Adam goes to the park every day. (yesterday)

3. Rearrange.

1. years – became – over – ago – powerful – **Egypt** – 5,000.

2. are – **Gold** – and – minerals – silver.

4. Read the passage and answer the questions.

The water you drink at lunch is a natural resource. Where do the potatoes we eat come from? They're grown in the ground, and this ground is made up of what we call soil. So yes, soil too, is a natural resource. Some resources are what we call renewable. Renewable resources can be naturally replaced when they run out. The sun, wind and falling water are examples of renewable resources.

A. Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False).

1. The water is not a natural resource. (……)
2. The ground is made up of what we call soil. (……)
3. Renewable resources can't be replaced. (……)

B. Answer the following questions:

4. Where do potatoes come from?

……

5. Give examples for renewable resources.

……

5. Look and write.



wrote - everything

……



There - two

……

6. Supply the missing letters.



ca_ _et



oc_opu_



bo_ _s



o_ _e

Activity 1

1. Underline the correct words in brackets.

1. Our (lungs – stomach - skeleton) protects our organs.
2. Sally did (hers – him – her) project on solar energy.
3. (Frogs – Turtles – Dragonflies) can fly very fast.
4. Some invertebrates can swim very (bad – good – well).
5. If you are a (service – pedestrian – workshop), you have to be careful.
6. He (didn't – doesn't – aren't) do homework yesterday.
7. (Matrouh – Alexandria – New Valley) is the biggest governorate.
8. She (**has – have – is**) never traveled on a ferry.

2. Rewrite.

1. This is Ali's neighborhood. (It's ….)

2. Humans aren't as strong as ants. (Ants…)

3. There is a donkey in my village. (some)

4. Retaj wakes up early. (not)

3. Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Dina: ……?

Hana: I live in Alexandria.

Dina: ……?

Hana: Yes, I …… because ……

4. Look and write.



ship - straight

……



wind – power

……

5. Supply the missing letters.



pu_ _le



sto_ac_



_ _ones



art_sa_

6. Look and write a paragraph of four (4) sentences.

……

……

……

……



7. Read and complete.

petroleum – joined – pumps - seasons

1. Mena …… the two parts of Egypt.
2. There were three …… of farming in Egypt.
3. Plastic is made from ……

Unit 1

Activities on Unit 1

1. Underline the correct words in brackets.

1.swallow 2.am 3.stomach 4.lungs 5. work 6. blood 7. lives 8. feed

2. Re-arrange.

1. Umm Ali is my favorite Egyptian dish.
2. People who are deaf can't hear well.
2. What will you do?

3. Supply the missing parts in the dialogue.

1. The left side
2. Right handed
3. Are right handed or left handed?

4. Reading comprehension.

1. True 2. False 3. True
4. For a healthy nervous system
5. In cakes, cookies, and candy

5. Look and write.

1. I have got a gold medal.
2. She is listening to music.
3. We chew with our teeth.
4. We have two lungs.

6. Write a paragraph of 4 sentences.

When we breathe we use our respiratory system. We put food in our mouths. We chew food and swallow it and it goes to our stomach. There is a special liquid that helps our bodies absorb nutrient.

7. Supply the missing letters.

skeleton – bone – blood - heart
muscle - lungs

Activities on Unit 2

1. Underline the correct words in brackets.

1.land 2.slowly 3.water 4.oxygen 5. best 6. scales 7. slow 8. warmly

2. Re-arrange.

1. Most mammals live on land.
2. Beaks are made of bones.
3. Most reptiles have four legs.

3. Supply the missing parts in the dialogue.

1. The elephant
2. The blue whale
3. What is the smallest animal?
4. The ostrich
5. The bee hummingbird

4. Reading comprehension.

1. True 2. False 3. False

5. Look and write.

1. Invertebrates are cold-blooded.
2. The crab has a hard shell.
3. Arachnids have 8 legs.
4. Some fish are brightly colored.

6. Write a paragraph of 4 sentences.

We grow plants in the soil. A water lily is a plant that grows in water. They float on water. They have flat leaves.

7. Supply the missing letters.

giraffe - gills - fur - scale
fins - beak

Unit 3

Activities on Unit 1

1. Underline the correct words in brackets.

1.dynasties 2.washed 3. scribes 4.paprus reeds 5. worked 6. port 7. live 8. was

2. Re-arrange.

1. I live in Bani Swaif Governorate.
2. Egypt has lots of traditional music.
3. We can see hieroglyphs in tombs and museum.

3. Supply the missing parts in the dialogue.

1. A community is a group of people who live and work together.
2. It includes family, friends and school.
3. Are we part of that community?

4. Reading comprehension.

1. True 2. False 3. True
4. Two areas
5. It was in the south.

5. Look and write.

1. Egypt controlled the Nile River.
2. Damietta is 910 square kilometres.
3. Alexandria Governorate has a port.
4. I live in the Red Sea Governorate.

6. Write a paragraph of 4 sentences.

Aswan is the farthest south in Upper Egypt. Its capital is Aswan. The High Dam is in Aswan. In 1970, engineers finished the Aswan High Dam.



7. Supply the missing letters.

High Dam - beach - geography - city - scuba diving - river

Unit 4

Activities on Unit 1

1. Underline the correct words in brackets.

1.city 2.When 3. workshop 4. Pedestrians 5. although 6. densely 7. After 8. so that

2. Re-arrange.

1. I live in sparsely populated city.

2. It is an urban environment.

3. I have got one brother.

3. Supply the missing parts in the dialogue.

1. I live in a village.

2. I grow potatoes, tomatoes and oranges. 3. Where do you live in this village?

4. Reading comprehension.

1. False 2. True 3. False

4. They are botanical gardens and the bazaar.

5. He likes drinking lemonade.

5. Look and write.

1. I visited Philae temples.

2. I live in an apartment.

3. There are a lot of cars, so there's a congestion.

4. The artisans dry the wool.

6. Write a paragraph of 4 sentences.

I went to a carpet workshop. I saw artisans. They made carpets. They use plants and roots to make beautiful dies to color the wool.

7. Supply the missing letters.

dye - carpet - warp - geese - donkey - buffalo

Unit 5

Activities on Unit 1

1. Underline the correct words in brackets.

1.of 2.am 3. construct 4.lungs 5. his 6. non-renewable 7. my 8. him

2. Re-arrange.

1. Mona worked for three years in Cairo.

2. Asmaa would like to have an interview.

3. The weather is hot and sunny.

3. Supply the missing parts in the dialogue.

1. He is 2. He works in a school.

3. Is it a hard job?

4. Reading comprehension.

1. False 2. True 3. False

4. Through teamwork and being positive.

5. Yes, we should.

5. Look and write.

1. I kiss my mother.

2. We finish school at twelve o'clock.

3. We use solar panels to collect energy.

4. The teamwork is important for a successful project.

6. Write a paragraph of 4 sentences.

I get up at 6 o'clock. I go to school at 7 o'clock. I do my homework after school. I sleep at 8 o'clock.

7. Supply the missing letters.

minerals - petroleum - plastic - wood - soil - water

Unit 6

Activities on Unit 1

1. Underline the correct words in brackets.

1.a pipe 2.have 3. rail 4.planet 5. take 6. robot 7. play 8. seen

2. Re-arrange.

1. What will you do?

2. Don't tell your friends your password. 3. We won't watch the news.

3. Supply the missing parts in the dialogue.

1. He is a robotics engineer.

2. He designs autonomous machines.

3. What else he will do?

4. Reading comprehension.

1. False 2. False 3. True

4. Tech jobs

5. They create a positive experience between the user and technology.

5. Look and write.

1. Robotics engineers designs autonomous machines.

2. People will travel to the Moon in the future.

3. Airplanes will use solar energy.

4. The search engine is useful for checking things online.

6. Write a paragraph of 4 sentences.

To be safe online use a strong password. Don't tell your friends your password. Don't use personal information when you create a password. Don't use the same password for different accounts.

7. Supply the missing letters.

headset - planets - spacecraft - web page - pipe - rail

8. Punctuate.

Mr Mohamed is our teacher.

Activity 1

1. Underline the correct words in brackets.

1.train 2.my 3. positive 4.didn't 5. bones
6. doesn't 7. line 8. ferry

2. Rewrite.

1. The African elephant is bigger than the Asian elephant.
2. Mona always plays football.
3. People will travel to Mars.
4. This is my book.

3. Re-arrange.

1. The skeleton is made up of all bones in our body. 2. We can't make primary colors by mixing other colors.

4. Reading comprehension.

1. False 2. True 3. False
4. We use our digestive system.
5. The food mixes with a special liquid.

5. Look and write.

1. Muscles move our bodies.
2. Birds are warm-blooded.

6. Supply the missing letters.

fish - scale - camel - violin

Activity 2

1. Underline the correct words in brackets.

1.heart 2.faster 3. vacation 4.before
5. Vertebrates 6. doesn't 7. city 8. loudly

2. Rewrite.

1. Amira doesn't watch cartoons.
2. I eat healthy food before I exercise.
3. Egypt is the most beautiful country.
4. He wakes up early so that he can catch the bus.

3. Supply the missing parts in the dialogue.

1. What are snakes?
2. They don't have any legs.
3. No, they don't. They have scales.

4. Look and write.

1. The village is sparsely populated.
2. Amphibians like frogs lays their eggs on water.

5. Supply the missing letters.

coal - mineral - scribe – beak

6. Write a paragraph of 4 sentences.

To heave a healthy life we should have a healthy diet. We should eat fruits and vegetables. We should drink lots of water. We shouldn't eat too much sugar or fats.

7. Read and complete.

loud - see - weighs

Activity 3

1. Underline the correct words in brackets.

1.competition 2.gold 3. language 4.than
5. primary 6. good 7. won't 8. soil

2. Rewrite.

1. Both the two children presented their projects on Monday.
2. No, I don't.
3. The sunflower is bigger than the water lily.
4. I won't buy a new car next year.

3. Read and complete.

entrepreneur – virtual – weather – solar

4. Reading comprehension.

1. False 2. True 3. True
4. Mental and physical activities.
5. They are good for our brain.

5. Look and write.

1. I visit my grandparents every week.
2. Fossil fuel is a non-renewable resource.

6. Supply the missing letters.

wave power - spin - heart - congestion

Activity 4

1. Underline the correct words in brackets.

1.fats 2.land 3. code 4.dynasty 5. hers
6. Experience 7. Scribes 8. crafts

2. Rewrite.

1. The daisy is more colourful than the rose.
2. This is my doll.
3. Every time I look at him , I remember his brother.
4. I sometimes meet him.

3. Write a paragraph of 4 sentences.

My father is a ship captain. He drives ships. His job is difficult. The ships should be straight.

4. Look and write.

1. The algae live inside the polyps.
2. The elephants feed their babies with milk.

5. Supply the missing letters.

desert – tidal power - warp - ostrich

6. Read and match.

1. A grasshopper can jump far.
2. We move muscles when we play.
3. Our brain controls everything we do.
4. Raqs Assaya is very famous.

7. Re-arrange.

1. We use our ears for hearing.
2. I live in a big city.
3. We will travel to Mars.

Activity 5

1. Underline the correct words in brackets.

1.energy 2.stronger 3. cold 4.the 5. pollen
6. quickly 7. although 8. children

2. Rewrite.

1. Will Hana visit us tomorrow?
2. A spider is less dangerous than a snake.
3. A plant needs sunshine.
4. I want to go out although it's raining.

3. Supply the missing parts in the dialogue.

1. Do you like music?
2. I prefer Saidi music
3. My favorite singer is Metqal.

4. Reading comprehension.

1. True 2. True 3. False
4. They need water or moist habitat.
5. Amphibians

5. Look and write.

1. The High Dam is in Aswan.
2. My father is a musician.

6. Supply the missing letters.

fur - loom - ney – solar power

Activity 6

1. Underline the correct words in brackets.

1.dots 2.her 3. Don't tell 4.learn
5. biggest 6. Pipelines 7. useful 8. as soon as

2. Rewrite.

1. Aysel is the most beautiful girl.
2. While we watched the match, we ate pies.
3. I have never seen a robot.
4. Adam went to the park yesterday.

3. Re-arrange.

1. Egypt became powerful over 5,000 years ago.
3. Gold and silver are minerals.

4. Reading comprehension.

1. True 2. True 3. False
4. They are grown in the ground.
5. The sun, wind and falling water.

5. Look and write.

1. The Egyptian scribes wrote everything that happened.
2. There are two geese.

6. Supply the missing letters.

carpet - octopus - bones - oboe

Activity 7

1. Underline the correct words in brackets.

1.skeleton 2.her 3. Dragonflies 4.well
5. pedestrian 6. didn't 7. New Valley
8. has

2. Rewrite.

1. This is Ali's neighbourhood. It's his.
2. Ants are stronger than humans.
3. There are some donkeys in my village.
4. Retaj doesn't wake up early.

3. Supply the missing parts in the dialogue.

1. Where do you live?

2. Do you like Alexandria.

3. Yes, I do because it's a beautiful city.

4. Look and write.

1. The ship should be straight.

2. The wind power is a renewable resource.

5. Supply the missing letters.

purple - stomach - stones – artisan

6. Write a paragraph of 4 sentences.

The ostrich is the biggest bird. It is also the fastest bird. It's faster than a leopard. It can be 2,5 meters tall.

7. Read and complete.

joined - seasons - petroleum

